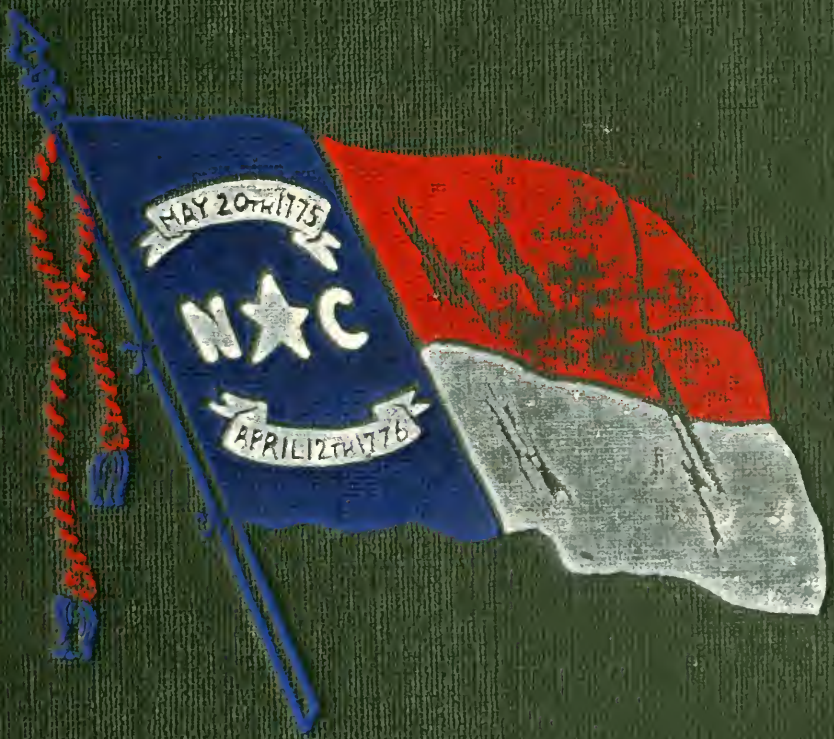
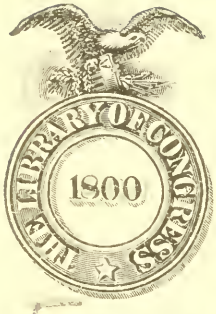
A CHILD'S HISTORY OF NORTH CAROLINA



W.C. ALLEN



Class F254
Book .A42
Copyright No.

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.

THE GREAT SEAL OF THE STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA
MAY 20, 1775.
ESSE QUAM VIDERI

A CHILD'S HISTORY OF NORTH CAROLINA

A Text-Book for North Carolina Schools

By WILLIAM C. ALLEN

Author of "North Carolina History Stories," "Carolina Whigs and Tories," "Centennial History of Haywood County."

"Carolina, Carolina, Heaven's Blessings Attend Her."

AUTHORS CO-OPERATIVE PUB. CO.

125 Church Street New York City

Copyright, 1916

BY

WILLIAM C. ALLEN

All Rights Reserved

JUN -2 1916

©CLA433362

TO THE PEOPLE OF NORTH CAROLINA,
INTERESTED, APPRECIATIVE,
RESPONSIVE, ENTRUSIASTIC,
IN ALL THAT PERTAINS TO THE
WELFARE OF THE STATE
THIS BOOK IS AFFECTIONATELY
DEDICATED.

PREFACE

In this volume I have endeavored to give the leading facts in the history of North Carolina, a task, which has occupied much of my spare time for the last ten years. Among the abundance of material, so well prepared by patriotic North Carolinians, it has been difficult to select that which has been most suitable for a book intended for use in the public schools. The most reliable sources have been assiduously consulted, and it is believed that the story of the making of North Carolina herein presented is entirely trustworthy.

Constant use, in making comparisons, has been made of the "old masters" in North Carolina history. The pages of Francis X. Martin, Francis L. Hawks, E. W. Caruthers, and Joseph H. Wheeler, who wrote so entertainingly of the Colonial history of the State, of John W. Moore, who rescued much of our history from oblivion, and of the monumental tasks of Romulus M. Saunders and Judge Walter Clark, known as the Colonial and State Records, have contributed many hours of pleasure and profit in the preparation of this volume now being sent upon its mission. Much time has been spent in comparing these authorities on disputed points with the hope that the exact truth might be obtained. It is believed that an

impartial and conservative view has been taken. No incident or story has been inserted about which there is a doubt. The greatest pains have been taken to make the work as nearly accurate as possible.

Thanks are due Dr. Kempt P. Battle, the veteran ex-president of the State University, who kindly read my manuscript and made many valuable criticisms and suggestions. I am also indebted eo Colonel A. M. Waddell, of Wilmington, who gave me material assistance in the chapter on the Wilmington Revolution. Without the aid of these gentlemen I should have been seriously delayed in the preparation of the work.

Of all emotions that stir the human soul, love of country is one of the noblest. A proper State pride is also an emotion that fires youth and stimulates honest endeavor. If this book, unpretentious and imperfect, shall help to promote these two virtues in the lives of the boys and girls of the "Old North State," the author will be fully repaid for his expenditure of toil and patience in its preparation.

Waynesville, N. C.
March 1, 1916.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Chapter		Page
	Introduction	17
	Attempted Settlements, 1584-1590	
1.	Discovery	25
2.	The First Colony	32
3.	The Lost Colony	38
	Proprietary Government, 1663-1729	
4.	The First Permanent Settlement	47
5.	The Lords Proprietors and the Fundamental Constitutions	53
6.	Troubles in the Albemarle Colony	60
7.	Five Years of Misrule	66
8.	Revolt of the Quakers	70
9.	The Governors and the People	76
10.	The Tuscarora War	82
11.	End of the Indian War	87
12.	Recovery from the Indian War	93
13.	The Pirate Blackbeard and Others	99
14.	End of the Proprietary Rule	104
	Period of Expansion and Growth, 1730-1775	
15.	Ten Years of Progress	113
16.	The Growing Province	118
17.	Calm Before the Storm	124

Contents.

Chapter		Page
18.	The Stamp Act	128
19.	Rise of the Regulators	134
20.	Battle of Alamance	138
21.	Movement Toward Independence	144
22.	End of Royal Rule	148
23.	Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence	153
24.	The Province Becomes a State	159
25.	Life in the Colony	164

Independence and Nationality, 1775-1789

26.	Battle of Moore's Creek Bridge	173
27.	Year of Indepence	179
28.	Partisan Warfare in the Northwest	184
29.	Four Uneventful Years	189
30.	Battle of Ramseur's Mill	194
31.	The Hornets' Nest	199
32.	Battle of Kings Mountain	204
33.	Third Attempt to Conquer North Carolina	210
34.	Greene's Retreat to the Dan	215
35.	Pyle's Hacking Match	220
36.	Battle of Guilford Courthouse	225
37.	Cornwallis Retires to Virginia	231
38.	Partisan Conflicts	236
39.	Battle of Elizabethton	241
40.	Close of the Revolution	245
41.	The Calm After the Storm	250
42.	The State of Franklin	254
43.	North Carolina Joins the Union	259

Contents.

Chapter		Page
	Union and Disunion, 1789-1865	
44.	Building the Capital City	267
45.	The Spirit of Development	272
46.	The War of 1812	276
47.	N. Carolina Seamen in the War of 1812	280
48.	Sectional Differences	286
49.	The Constitution of 1835	291
50.	The Cherokee Indians and Their Reservation	296
51.	The Public Schools and Industrial Development	300
52.	War with Mexico	304
53.	Progress of Public Institutions	309
54.	In Slavery Times	314
55.	North Carolina Secedes from the Union	319
56.	North Carolina First at Bethel	324
57.	The State Invaded	328
58.	Further Progress of the War	333
59.	Progress of Events	339
60.	Farthest to the Front at Gettysburg	344
59.	Progress of Events	339
61.	Pickett's Attack on Newbern	349
62.	The Ram Albemarle and the Capture of Plymouth	354
63.	The War in Virginia	358
64.	Fall of Wilmington	363
65.	Sherman Invades the State	367
66.	Last at Appomattox	371
67.	End of the War	376

Contents.

Chapter Page

Period of Reconstruction and Growth, 1865-1916

68. Coming of the Carpet-Bagger 385
69. The Ku-Klux Klan 390
70. The Kirk War 394
71. Impeachment of Governor Holden 398
72. Retreat of the Carpet-Bagger 402
73. Industrial and Educational Progress 406
74. Events at Home and Abroad 411
75. Educational Awakening 416
76. Most Recent Times 420

Appendices

Constitution of North Carolina 429
List of the Governors 477
List of the Counties 479

INTRODUCTION

"Breathes there a man with soul so dead
Who never to himself hath said
This is my own, my native land?"
—Byron.

THE COUNTRY.

Extent and Size.—By consulting a map of the United States it will be seen that North Carolina is the largest State, with the exception of Georgia, on the Atlantic coast. It is five hundred and three miles long and one hundred and eighty-seven miles wide, in its greatest extent. Its area is 52,250 square miles. If the State could be made to revolve around a pin, at Murphy, swinging south, Cape Hatteras, on the extreme east, would cut Florida into two almost equal parts, and, continuing as the hands of a clock, would sweep the Gulf of Mexico, cross the Mississippi near Vicksburg, brush St. Louis on the northwest edge, stalk across Illinois and Indiana, cut into Lake Erie a few miles, cut off the southwest corner of Pennsylvania, dash through the Maryland panhandle, and after striking the surf on the coast of Virginia settle to its original position.

Natural Divisions.—There are three natural divisions of the State's surface, as follows: the Eastern, extending from the tide water districts to the western line of sand-hills along the Wil-

mington and Weldon Railroad; the Middle or Piedmont, stretching from the western verge of sand-hills to the foot of the Blue Ridge; and the Western, including the mountainous section of the State. The Eastern is chiefly lowlands, level, and, in many places, swampy. The soil, when reclaimed from the incessant overflow, is exceedingly fertile and productive. The Middle is rolling and hilly with broad stretches of level land that produce abundant crops. The Western contains the most beautiful and romantic mountain scenery in the eastern half of the United States.

Rivers and Sounds.—North Carolina is well watered. In the east the Chowan, the Roanoke, the Tar, the Neuse, and the Cape Fear are beautiful streams that furnish highways for trade along their banks. The middle section prides itself on having the Haw, the Deep, the Catawba, the Yadkin, and the Dan, all supplying water power of superior advantages and contributing largely to the wealth of the State. The mountain division is made beautiful by the limpid waters of the French Board, the Swannanoa, the Pigeon, the Tuskaseigee, the Watauga, the Hiwassee, the Nantahala, the Tennessee, the New, and the Oconalufty Rivers.

In the east the Albemarle and Pamlico sounds are beautiful sheets of water, abounding in fish and oysters. Besides these two, there are Bogue, Core, Croatan, Roanoke, and Currituck sounds, which are inlets or arms of the first mentioned two. During the winter season great flocks of

ducks, geese, and swans frequent these waters, furnishing sport for hunters, who go there in large numbers, and a source of revenue to the inhabitants of those sections.

Mountain Scenery.—The mountains of western North Carolina are famed for their beauty. Some of the finest scenery in the United States can be found among the Balsams, the Great Smokies, and the Black Mountains. Mount Mitchell in Yancey County is the highest peak east of the Mississippi river. There are about forty other peaks that attain a height of over six thousand feet. Clingman's Dome, near the Tennessee line, was for a time considered the highest peak in the State, but that distinction is now universally accorded to Mount Mitchell.

Soil and Products.—In the eastern section the soil is usually sandy except in the bottom lands where the black earth, made by vegetable deposits, is abundant. The middle and western divisions have clayey soil. The products are varied. Nearly all kinds of produce in the United States can be grown in North Carolina. Cotton, corn, wheat, and tobacco are the chief staple crops. The mineral products are becoming more and more valuable. Gold, copper, mica, kaolin, zinc, and marl are among the most valuable that are worked.

THE ORIGINAL INHABITANTS.

Occupiers of the Land.—Previous to 1584 no white man had ever set foot on the soil of North

Carolina. Indians were the only inhabitants and the sole tillers of the soil. They lived in wigwans near the sounds and rivers of the east, on the plains and in the valleys of the middle section, and among the mountains of the west. Their hunting grounds stretched from the sandhills of the tide-water section to the towering peaks of the Appalachians.

The Tribes and Their Homes.—In the eastern section dwelt the powerful Tuscaroras and the smaller tribes partially or wholly dependent upon them, namely, the Corees, the Mattamuskeets, the Yeopins, the Meherrins, the Pungos, the Chowanokes, and the Croatans. In the Piedmont section, the fierce Catawbas held sway; while the mountains were occupied by the numerous and warlike Cherokees.

Dress and Customs.—When the first settlers came they found the natives in a barbarous condition Their houses were of the rudest structure, built of poles and covered with bark or mats made of bull-rushes. Their clothing was made from the skins of animals, or straw plaited together. They wore no shoes nor hats. For plowing the land, these simple people had nothing more than a wooden mattock with which they broke the soil for the planting of the few seeds they had. Their only crops were corn, melons, peas, and tobacco. For weapons they had the bow and arrow and the tomahawk fashioned from stone. Religion was with them a sentiment. They believed in a Great Spirit, who rewarded the faithful by giving at

death an abundant entrance into the happy hunting ground of the beyond.

Game and Fish.—The forests were filled with game. Buffaloes, elks, bears, deer, panthers, and wolves swarmed upon the plains and the hills. Smaller game abounded in all parts of the country, and birds of rich plumage made the forests vocal with their melody. Fish of almost every variety were found in the waters of the east. The country was a real paradise for the simple natives.

The Unbroken Wilderness.—One vast wilderness of virgin forests extended from mountains to sea. Here and there, it is true, the wild solitude was broken by an Indian village surrounded by patches of Indian corn and stretches of baren land, that had been made so by forest fires. The forests were almost pathless. At intervals trails made by Indian hunters might be seen threading their way from hill to hill. Otherwise the wilderness was unbroken.

Ignorance of the Natives.—In this trackless solitude the simple natives lived and dreamed away their lives. No thought was given to the people that dwelt on the other side of the great ocean, nor did these children of the wilderness know of the great events transpiring in other quarters of the earth. Their knowledge of the world was limited by the borders of their hunting grounds and the great expanse of water stretched out before them.

Prophecies and Visions.—The natives were a people that dreamed dreams and saw visions. They

had prophets and fortune tellers that told of great things that should happen. One of the prophecies told of strange beings, with pale faces and blue eyes, who should come from across the seas and take possession of the land and drive the Indian from his home. Believing this story, many a dusky warrior, with tomahawk and bow, would stand upon the beach for days looking toward the rising sun for the coming of the expected enemy. Such was North Carolina before it was discovered by Englishmen, a great State in embryo without a name, inhabited by a people unable and incapable of subduing the land.

QUESTIONS AND MAP STUDIES.

1. Give the length, breadth, and area of North Carolina.
2. Give some idea of the size of the State from illustration.
3. Name and locate the natural divisions and tell something of each.
4. Name the chief rivers in each section. Trace them on the map.
5. Name and locate the sounds.
6. For what are the mountains famed?
7. What is said of Mount Mitchel and Clingman's Dome? Locate them.
8. How many peaks are over six thousand feet high?
9. Describe the soil in each of the three sections, and name the agricultural and mineral products.

10. What was the condition of the State before the coming of the white settlers?
11. Where and how did the Indians live?
12. Name the tribes and tell where each lived.
13. What kind of game abounded?
14. What was the condition of the country?
15. Tell something of the ignorance of the natives?
16. What prophecy had been made?

ATTEMPTED SETTLEMENTS.

1584—1590

CHAPTER I.

DISCOVERY.

First Ships in North Carolina Waters.—July 4th, 1584, two ships sailed through the narrow inlet near what is now Ocracoke and came to anchor in the placid waters east of an island that has since been called Roanoke. These were the first ships ever seen in those waters. The Indians that were in the neighborhood, saw them with astonishment and began to run away in fear. It was a great sight to the red man and filled him with alarm, for he looked upon the strange boats as enormous birds with white wings, sent by the Great Spirit to punish him for some wrongs he had committed.

Where the Ships were From.—The ships were from England, and had been sent over by Sir Walter Raleigh, a rich nobleman of London, under the command of Philip Amadas and Arthur Barlowe, to explore the South Atlantic coast. Raleigh had obtained a charter from Queen Elizabeth, giving him the right to explore and settle any country that was not at that time in possession of a Christian prince. He was a favorite of

the queen and had an almost unlimited fortune at his command. The ships he had sent to North Carolina waters were small but well equipped and manned by one hundred doughty sailors.

The Indians Show Themselves.—It was two days before the Indians plucked up courage enough to approach the white men. They were watching the ships from their hiding places on shore, not daring to show themselves. Amadas and Barlowe had begun to think the country uninhabited, for they had as yet seen no signs of human beings. On the third day, however, Englishmen on board the boats saw in the distance a canoe, with three men in it, coming toward them, following the line of the shore, coming into view and disappearing again as it made the curves of the coast line.

An Indian Brave.—On board the ship every man was observing the approaching canoe. As the boat came nearer it was seen that the three men were hesitating as to what they should do. When within a few hundred yards of the ships, the canoe was run ashore and one of the men got out. Leaving the other two in the boat he ran along the shore toward the ships and beckoned to the Englishmen on board. It was plain, by his manner, that he wanted to speak to them. Captain Amadas, with others, went over to the Indian, who received them with every sign of welcome, and assured them that he came as a friendly messenger.

Visit to the Ships.—After many exclamations,

which were understood to be friendly overtures, the Indian got into the Englishmen's boat and asked to be taken to the big ships. He was taken over and shown many things that were wonderful to him. Captain Barlowe presented the Indian with a shirt and a hat, which delighted him very much. He ate some of the Englishmen's food and drank some of their wine, which he seemed to like. After looking at everything in the two ships, he asked to be taken back to shore.

An Expression of Thanks.—Upon reaching his own boat, the Indian, with his companions, rowed out into the sound and began fishing. In half an hour they had caught as many fish as their little boat would hold. Coming again to land nearest the ships they divided the fish into two heaps, and by motions and signs showed that each English boat should take a share. With this expression of thanks the Indians departed.

Visit of Granganimeo.—Several days later a great Indian chief, Granganimeo, came, with forty or fifty warriors, to see the Englishmen's ships, for the news of the arrival of the white men had spread to all the tribes around. The Englishmen armed themselves, for they were uncertain whether the Indians meant war or not, and went over to the shore where the savages were. As the boat pulled up to the shore the white men made a great noise by rattling their guns and swords to see whether or not the Indians would be frightened, but the grim warriors showed no sign of fear. Granganimeo was seated on a large bear

skin. He beckoned to the captains to come and be seated on a part of his bear skin. Then he made a long speech of welcome in his own language, pointing with his fingers and striking his own head and breast and the heads and breasts of Amadas and Barlowe to show his friendship.

Giving of Presents.—In order to return this show of friendship, Amadas and Barlowe presented the chief with some jewelry and wearing apparel which he took and put into a basket near by. Not to slight anyone the Englishmen then gave all the Indian attendants some small presents, but Granganimeo immediately got up and took from his attendants all the articles they had received and put them in his own basket, showing that he wished all gifts to be made to himself.

King Wingina.—By signs Granganimeo told the sailors that he had come as a messenger from his brother, Wingina, who was the king of the country, and who at that time was suffering from a wound recently received in a battle with a neighboring tribe. After a further exchange of courtesies Granganimo left, much pleased with the Englishmen and the Englishmen with him.

Trading with the Natives.—For some weeks Amadas and Barlowe remained in those waters, trading with the natives who came every day. The white men exchanged tin ware, copper kettles, axes, and hatchets for skins and fish. The Indians were very anxious to purchase swords and guns, but the white men were wise enough to refuse to sell to them. A large tin dish especially

INDIAN WIGWAMS ON ROANOKE ISLAND.

pleased Granganimeo, who held it up to his breast saying that it would keep off the arrows of his enemies. He gave twenty deer skins for it, and, after making a hole through it, tied it around his neck, and left in high glee.

Visit to the Indian Village.—After trading with the natives for a few weeks Captain Barlowe, with seven other men, went to the northern end of Roanoke Island to visit Granganimeo and to learn what he could about the country. Granganimeo was away from home, but the Englishmen were well entertained by the chief's wife, a handsome young Indian woman dressed in skins and wearing beads that she had bought from the Englishmen a few weeks before. Barlowe and his men were surprised to find the Indians living in good houses. Granganimeo lived in a five room house, and many of his warriors had good homes also, an unusual thing among the Indians of that time. The Englishmen were rustically and royally entertained, and departed next day expressing many thanks to the royal hostess.

Departure for England.—For some days the white men explored the country and the waters near by, after which they returned to their ships. Soon thereafter they set sail for England, having spent two months in North Carolina. To prove their discovery Captains Armadas and Barlowe took with them two young Indian boys, Manteo, who became a steadfast friend of the English, and Wanchese, who became a relentless foe. They also carried with them samples of tobacco, which

was found on Roanoke Island, and the potato, which afterwards became the staple crop in Ireland and became known as "Irish potato."

QUESTIONS AND MAP STUDIES.

1. Find the following on the map: Ocracoke, Roanoke Island, Albemarle sound, Pamlico sound.
2. What ships came into Albemarle sound in 1584?
3. Why had they come? How did the Indians regard them?
4. Tell of the first meeting of the Englishmen and the Indian brave.
5. How was the Indian treated on board the ships?
6. How did he show his thanks?
7. Give an account of the visit of Granganimeo.
8. Who was king of the country? Why didn't he come?
9. What trading was done with the Indians?
10. What article specially pleased Granganimeo
11. Give an account of the giving of presents.
12. What visit did the white men make?
13. Why were they surprised? Who entertained them?
14. How long did the Englishmen remain in North Carolina?
15. What did they take back to England?

CHAPTER II.

THE FIRST COLONY.

Favorable Report About the New Land.—Amadas and Barlowe returned to England in September, and wrote a description of the country they had visited. The soil was declared to be exceedingly fertile; the vegetation very abundant; game plentiful; and fishing wonderfully fine. Sir Walter Raleigh was well pleased with the report and determined to plant a colony in the new land. Queen Elizabeth was so delighted with the newly discovered country that she gave it the name of Virginia in honor of herself, the virgin queen.

A Colony Sent Out.—Sir Walter Raleigh began at once the gathering of a colony to send to Roanoke. He called for volunteers and one hundred and seven men responded. In the list of names of those who came over in this colony such familiar North Carolina names as the following are found: Rogers, Harvey, Taylor, Philips, Kelly, Harris, Allen (Allyne), Norris, White, Barnes, Latham, Stevenson, Mason, Skinner, and Lane. Ralph Lane was appointed governor; Philip Amadas, one of the discoverers of the year before, bore the high sounding title of "Admiral of the country;" and Sir Richard Grenville was

put in command of the fleet of seven small vessels that brought the colony over.

First Conflict with the Natives.—The colony left England in April 1585, and, after a voyage of nearly three months, cast anchor off the island of Wocoken on the coast of North Carolina on the third of July. Manteo and Wanchese, who were on board, went at once to Roanoke Island to tell Wingina, the king, that the English were coming to visit him. While waiting for them to return, Sir Richard Grenville, with a party of men, went to the mainland to explore the country round Pamlico sound. These men were unkind enough to do a very ugly thing. They went to an Indian village to spend the night, and the Indians were kind enough to give them the best beds they had, and the best food they could get. The next day one of the white men complained that an Indian boy had stolen a silver cup from him during the night. When the cup could not be found the Englishmen became angry and began to raise "rough house" about it. The savages were badly frightened and began to run in all directions. The white men shot at the fleeing Indians and set fire to the village, burning it to the ground. Not content with that the colonists destroyed all the corn growing round about. After thus paying for a night's lodging, Grenville and his men returned to the ships and found that Manteo was there with a message from Wingina, inviting the colonists to locate on Roanoke Island. Granganimeo also came to urge the white men to come.

MANTEO - THE LORD OF ROANOKE.

Wanchese did not come back to the ships, but afterwards entered into a plot to destroy the colony.

Beginning the Settlement.—Accepting the invitation of the Indian king, the colonists went immediately to Roanoke Island and began the making of homes for themselves. By this time the Indians in the neighborhood had heard of the cruel act of the white men a few weeks before in the burning of a village and the destruction of crops, and began to show some signs of unfriendliness. Governor Lane, therefore, built a fort for protection against his hostile neighbors.

Lane's Explorations and Adventures.—After completing his fort and the temporary dwelling-places Governor Lane set out upon his exploring expeditions up and down the rivers and sounds of that section. He went up the Chowan river beyond where Winton now stands, and made an examination of the county on each side. He also explored the Roanoke, then called Morotoc, for more than one hundred miles. To the south he traversed the waters of the Pamlico sound and river of the same name, extending his explorations up the Neuse river above the present site of Newbern. On his trip up the Roanoke he was in great danger from the natives. Wingina, who, with Wanchese, had entered into a plot to destroy the colony, told Governor Lane some big stories about rich mines up the river, near the place, he said, where the waves from the great western ocean washed over into the Morotoc river. Lane

believed these incredible stories and decided to make the journey in search of the gold mines, a thing the plotters wished him to do; for they expected Lane and his companions to be slain by the warlike tribes along the river.

Wingina's Plot to Destroy the Colony.—Accordingly when Lane made ready to set out with boats and men, the cunning savage sent runners up the river to tell the Indians that the whites were coming to make war upon them. So when Lane and his men stopped at certain places to buy food, they found the natives unfriendly and unwilling to sell them anything. The explorers, therefore, had to go hungry much of the time.

Conflict with the Savages.—After some days the white men came to a bend in the river where a large crowd of Indians had assembled, who began to show hostile signs and to threaten the Englishmen with the tomahawk. Manteo, who was with Lane, said the Indians meant fight. He had hardly spoken when the whole crowd let fly a shower of arrows that fell upon the boat and in the water around, but did no damage. Governor Lane ordered his men to fire upon them, and the savages fled. Instantly the boat was run ashore; the white men leaped out with guns in hand, and charged up the hill expecting to find an army of red men to give them battle. Not a savage, however, was to be seen. They had fled to the woods.

Colonists Return to Roanoke.—Governor Lane then decided that it was best to return to Roan-

oke as provisions had given out and there was no chance to get more. On the way down the river the sailors got very hungry; and, as there was no food of the right sort, they killed one of the dogs and boiled the flesh with sassafras leaves. On this strange diet they subsisted for several days, reaching Roanoke half starved.

Disappointment of Wingina.—Wingina and Wanchese were greatly disappointed at the return of Governor Lane. They had even told the Englishmen who had been left on the island that Lane and his men had been slain in a great battle with the savages up the Monotoc river. These crafty red men, therefore, were much put out by Lane's safe return, and formed another plot to destroy the colony. Under the pretense that he was going to celebrate the funeral of his father, Ensinore, who had died in April, Wingina invited all the Indians around Roanoke to assemble on the island, June 10th. His plan was to get several thousand Indians together and have them at a given signal to fall upon the colony and kill every man. The plot was revealed to Governor Lane by Skyco, a friendly and trusted Indian.

Failure of the Plot.—About one hundred Indians had already assembled on Roanoke Island in the neighborhood of the colony before Lane became aware of the plot Immediately he led twenty-five armed men in an attack upon the savages, killed five of them and put the rest to flight. Seizing some of the Indian boats Lane led his little band to the mainland, where Wingina was.

made an assault upon his position, and slew him with eight of his warriors. The remainder of the tribe fled in terror. Four of the Englihsmen lost their lives in these conflicts.

Abandonment of the Settlement.—Soon after these events Sir Francis Drake, a famous English sea-captain, with a fleet of seven vessels, appeared off the coast. Preceiving that the colony was in danger of destruction, either by starvation or massacre, Governor Lane requested Drake to take the colonists all back to England. Arrangements were accordingly made, and on June 18th, 1586, Lane and the entire colony set sail for England having spent about ten months in North Carolina.

Arrival of Supply Ships.—Some days after the departure of the colony a ship loaded with provisions came from England, but, finding the colonists gone, returned home. Some two weeks afterward, Sis Richard Grenville, on his return voyage from the West Indies, stopped at Roanoke, and, finding the island deserted by white men, left a garrison of fifteen sailors to hold possession of the territory and continued his voyage to England. These men were later attacked and massacred by the Indians.

QUESTIONS AND MAP STUDIES.

1. Describe the courses of the following rivers: Roanoke, Chowan, Neuse, Pamlico.
2. What report did Amadas and Barlowe make?
3. What name was given the new land?

4. Tell how the colony was organized and give some of the names of men in it.
5. Who were the officers of the colony?
6. Give an account of the trouble at an Indian village.
7. What invitations were received by the colonists?
8. What did the white men first do at Roanoke?
9. Why were the Indians unfriendly-
10. Give a brief account of Lane's explorations and adventures.
11. Tell about Wingina's plots and how they failed.
12. How many lives were lost in the conflict?
13. How and why did the colonists return to England?

CHAPTER III.

THE LOST COLONY.

Preparation for a Second Colony.—Sir Walter Raleigh was much grieved at the failure of Lane's colony, but he did not abandon his cherished purpose of planting a settlement in the New World. He began immediately to get ready for sending out another colony. This time he provided for the building of permanent homes in the new country by sending out men and their families with the hope that homes would be made and a growing community begun. John White was appointed governor and a liberal charter granted the colony. According to instructions White was to go to Roanoke, take on board the fifteen Englishmen that had been left there, and proceed to the Chespeake bay where on its shores he was to build the "fair city of Raleigh."

The Landing at Roanoke.—In the spring of 1587, the colony of one hundred and seventeen men, women, and children, together with Manteo and Towaye, two Indians who went to England with Lane the year before, left Portsmouth, and after a voyage of nearly three months cast anchor at Roanoke Island, July 22nd. Simon Fernando, the admiral of the fleet, refused to take the settlers to the Chespeake, and White had to, against his

will, begin the settlement on the fatal island. Here the settlers began at once to repair the houses Lane had built and to build others. Some comfortable homes were provided, and the colony settled down to work, notwithstanding the fact that they were disappointed in the selection of the site. But the Indians were unfriendly. A short while after the landing, George Howe, one of the settlers, went about a mile from the settlement to catch crabs. He waded out into the sound where the water was shallow and was filling his bag with crabs, when some Indians, who had been watching him, crept up as near as they could and shot him to death with their arrows; and, after beating his head into pieces with their wooden swords fled to the mainland.

Resolution to Chastise the Indians.—This outrage filled the women and children with alarm and the men with anger. It was learned that the murder was committed by some of Wingina's men, who lived on the mainland. They had not forgotten how Governor Lane treated them the year before, nor the loss of the silver cup near Wokoken. It was believed that Wanchese also had something to do with the murder and that he led the attack upon the fifteen sailors Grenville had left there months before. The colonists, therefore, desired very much to take vengeance upon him and this wicked tribe.

Expedition Against the Savages.—To take the Indians by surprise Governor White, with twenty-four well armed men, went over to the mainland

very early one morning and ran upon a tribe of savages sitting around a camp fire. White and his men fired upon the unsuspecting natives, who immediately fled to the swamps. One Indian was killed and several wounded. The white men charged into the swamp intending to destroy the entire tribe, but they soon found out that a dreadful mistake had been made. Instead of having fired upon a hostile band, White learned that he had chanced upon some friendly Indians from the island of Croatan, Manteo's people, who had come over to make war upon the unfriendly tribe, and, finding them gone, were enjoying themselves in the camp of their enemies. The white men were very sorry that the mistake was made, and it grieved Manteo very much. Governor White, however, made amends by many subsequent acts of kindness.

The Lord of Roanoke.—Two or three days after the return of this expedition, August 13, 1587, Manteo became a Christian and was baptized, and at the same time he was dubbed a knight and made Lord of Roanoke in accordance with instructions given to Governor White by Sir Walter Raleigh before the colony sailed from England. This was the first Christian baptism and the first bestowal of knighthood within the present limits of the United States.

Birth of Virginia Dare.—Five days afterwards, August 18, little Virginia, daughter of Ananias and Eleanor Dare and the grand-daughter of Governor White, was born. She was the first child born of

English people in America. One of the counties in the State is named in her honor.

Return of Governor White to England.—By this time the ships that had brought the colony over were ready to return to England, and the colonists were prepairing their letters and tokens to send to friends across the sea. It became necessary for some one to go back with the fleet to get supplies for the colony. White was asked by the colonists to go, but he, at first, refused. Finally, he consented to do so, and bidding farewell to the fateful colony sailed for England.

Fatal Delay of the Governor.—Reaching England White found the nation in great confusion on account of a war then going on with Spain. A large Spanish fleet called the Invincible Armada was coming with an army to invade England. Everything and everybody were in confusion and excitement, and Governor White had to wait three years before he could get the necessary supplies for the colony. This delay was fatal. At last in the spring of 1590 with a relief ship and provisions he set out for Roanoke. When he landed and went to the fort he found it deserted and partially destroyed, the houses out of repair, and deer living in the undergrowth around. Not a human being was to be seen. Some pieces of furniture and a few old books and pamphlets were scattered about. There was no evidence of a conflict with the Indians. Everything indicated that the settlement had been deliberately abandoned.

Croatan.—Governor White was greatly grieved

at finding the settlement deserted, but presently he saw something which promised hope. On a tree just outside of the old fort, carved in bold letters, was the word CROATOAN. Upon a post near by was the syllable CRO. To White this meant that the colonists had gone to the island of Croatan, for it had been agreed upon between the governor and the settlers three years before that, if the colony should be moved in his absence, the name of the place to which the settlers had gone should be cut upon a tree near the fort, and if the colonists were in distress a cross should be cut above the name. There was no cross, and so Governor White expected to find the settlers safe and well at Croatan. It was a fact, which White did not know at the time that the mainland just west of Roanoke Island was also called Croatan or Croatoan.

Abandonment of the Colony to its Fate.—White hurried back to the ship intending to go at once to Croatan island to find the colony. Several circumstances, however, prevented his doing so. The admiral in command, said that the vessel needed repairing and provisions were short. He insisted that he would have to sail at once to the West Indies to refit. Governor White urged and almost begged that they should go in search of the colony, but in vain. While the two were arguing the matter a violent storm came up and blew the ship out to sea. For several days the storm raged, and when at last the sea became calm, it was found best to sail at once for England. Thus the colony

was left to its fate in an unknown land. White intended to return to Roanoke and search for the settlers until they were found, but Raleigh, at this time, was broken in fortune and somewhat in ill-favor with the queen. He was unable to procure the means for the trip, and darkness, therefore settled down upon this second attempt to colonize the New world. What became of the colonists is still an unanswered question. Some ten years after, several expeditions were sent out from England to find them, but nothing definite could ever be learned

Indian Stories.—Years afterward some Indians told the settlers at Jamestown, Va., that the colonists had been massacred with few exceptions by the Powhatan Indians of Virginia. The story, as told by these Indians, is that the settlers, soon after White's departure, moved to the mainland and lived there several years with the friendly Indians. Finally, the Powhatan tribe made war upon the Croatans, destroyed their villages, and massacred along with the Indians all the white people except four men, two boys, and a little girl who fled with Manteo to Croatan island and became lost to the world. It is assumed, that, if this story is true, Virginia Dare was the little girl that escaped. There is another story that Virginia grew to womanhood among the Indians, and that a rejected Indian lover possessing the power of witchcraft changed her to a white doe that defied for a long time the arrows of the hunters; but was finally killed by Wanchese, who carried

an enchanted bow. There is still another story that Virginia Dare, after reaching womanhood, became queen of the Hatteras tribe of Indians and ruled them wisely and well for many years.

The Probable Fate.—It is now generally believed that the colonists removed to Croatan Island and there intermarried with the savages, and in two or three generations lost their identity. The descendants of the Croatan tribe are still living in Robeson County, and have the appearance of possessing white blood in their veins. These people are now called Croatan Indians, and have a tradition that some of their ancestors were white people

QUESTIONS AND MAP STUDIES.

1. Point out the Chespeake Bay.
2. Where is Dare County? What is its county seat?
3. Where are the West Indies?
4. Point out Robeson County.
5. What kind of settlers did Raleigh now send out? Why?
6. Who was appointed Governor? What instructions were given him?
7. How many persons were in the colony?
8. Tell how George Howe was killed.
9. Tell how the colonists tried to revenge his death.
10. Relate two interesting events.
11. Why did White return to England? Why was he delayed?

12. When he returned to Roanoke what did he find?
13. Why did he not go in search of the colony?
14. Relate the Indian stories of how the colony was destroyed?
15. What was the probable fate of the colony?

GENERAL REVIEW OF THE PERIOD OF ATTEMPTED SETTLEMENTS.

PERSONS.

Give the facts about the following persons, answering the questions—who? when? where? what? —about each:

Walter Raleigh	Philip Amadas
Arthur Barlowe	Granganimeo
Wirgina	Manteo
Wanchese	Richard Grenville
Ralph Lane	Skyco
John White	George Howe
Virginia Dare	Eleanor Dare

PLACES

Tell where each is and for what noted.

Roanoke Island	Wokoken
Pamlico Sound	Chespeake Bay
Croatan	Jamestown

EVENTS

Give a short account of

An Indian's visit to the ships

Landing of Lane's Colony

Wingina's Plot
Murder of George Howe
Baptism of Manteo
White's Return to England
Indian Legends
Visit of Granganimeo
Trip up the Morotoc
Departure of the Colony
Attacks on the friendly Indians
Birth of Virginia Dare
Search for the Colonists
The Croatan Indians

Each of these topics might form subjects for written exercises.

PROPRIETARY GOVERNMENT.

1663—1729.

CHAPTER IV.

FIRST PERMANENT SETTLEMENT.

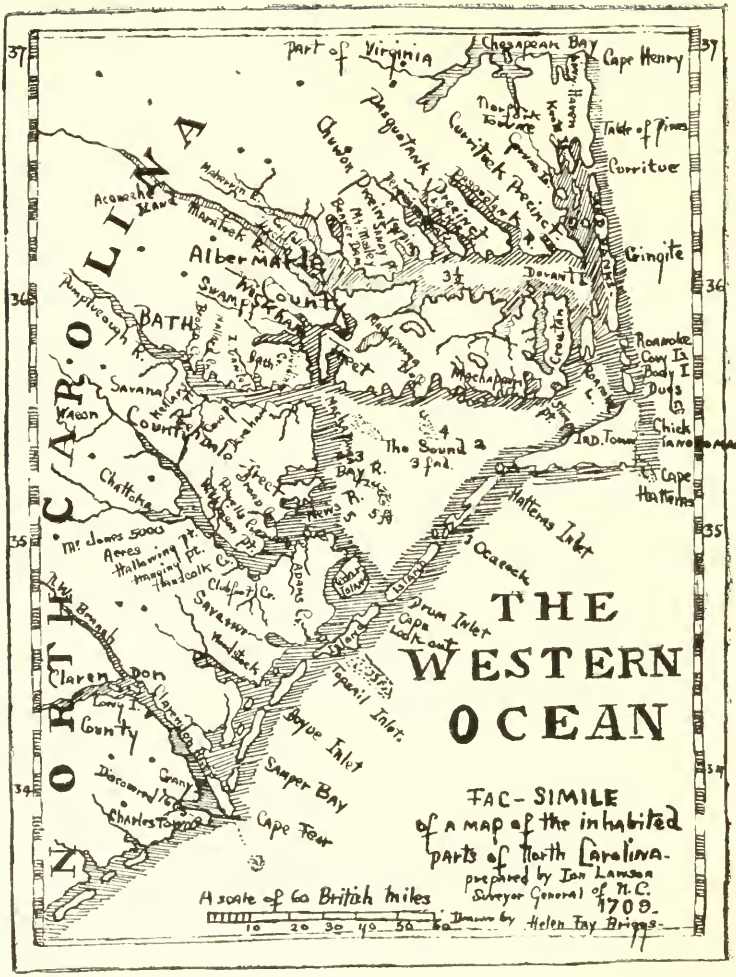
Sixty Years of Solitude.—After Governor White went back to England, leaving the colony lost in the wilds of North Carolina, more than sixty years elapsed before any other attempt was made to plant a colony in the present limits of the State. During that time Virginia had been settled, the Pilgrims had landed on Plymouth rock, and other settlements had been made on the Atlantic coast. Prosperous communities had grown up in many parts of what is now the United States. North Carolina, however, was still a wilderness with no white people within her borders.

North Carolina Given Away.—In 1629, Charles I., king of England, gave all the territory between 31 deg. and 36 deg. North latitude, including most of what is now North Carolina, besides the country to the South to the northern borders of Florida and westward to the Pacific ocean, to Sir Robert Heath, who was at that time Attorney-General of the kingdom. The country was then called Carolana, a name the French explorers had

given the whole coast south of Virginia years before in honor of their king Charles IX. The English called it Carolina in honor of their king Charles I. Heath held the grant for some years and then gave it to Lord Maltravers, who, in turn, gave it back to the king. It would seem, therefore, that in those days some people thought North Carolina was not worth having.

Some Explorations.—About 1622, before the Heath grant was made, a man by the name of Porey with some adventurers explored the lands on the Chowan and the Roanoke rivers, returning to Virginia settlements with a good report of the fertility of the country. In consequence of this report many people in the Jamestown Colony became anxious to move to the new land. Favorable grants, however, could not then be obtained.

In the fall of 1653, Francis Yardley, a resident of Jamestown, Va., made some explorations in the Albemarle section and established peace and friendship with the Indians. He came into that section by the way of Roanoke Island and saw there the old fort built by the first colonists seventy years before. He met also the king of all the tribes in the neighborhood of Roanoke and built for him a palace, which pleased the chieftain very much. Leaving Roanoke, Yardley went inland a considerable distance to the country of the Tuscaroras, who yielded themselves subjects to the English government by giving to the explorer a piece of earth with an arrow stuck through it.


NORTH CAROLINA
part of Virginia
Chesapeak Bay
Cape Henry
Currituck Precinct
Albemarle County
Swamp
BATH
Pamptecough R.
Pasquotank R.
Chowan R.
Perquimans R.
Roanoke Is.
Roanoke Body I
Ducks
Chick Ianoke
Cape Hatteras
Hatteras Inlet
Ocacock
Drum Inlet
Cape Look out
Topsail Inlet
Beaufort Inlet
Bogue Inlet
Swaper Bay
Cape Fear
Charles Towne
Clarendon
Clarendon R.
Clarendon County
Savannah
Savannah R.
Cheraw
Pedee R.
Waccamaw R.
Waccamaw
Lake
Mr. Jones 5000 Acres
Hallowing pt.
imaging pt.
Thedcalk Cr.
Adams Cr.
Cliffort Cr.
Bay R.
The Sound 3 fad.
THE WESTERN OCEAN
FAC-SIMILE
of a map of the inhabited parts of North Carolina.
prepared by Ian Lamson
Surveyor General of N.C.
1709.
A scale of 60 British miles
10 20 30 40 50 60
Drawn by Helen Fay Briggs

After visiting several other Indian communities he returned to Virginia and wrote an interesting account of his travels.

Roger Green's Colony.—In the same year Roger Green, a clergyman of Nansemond County, Virginia, obtained a grant of ten thousand acres of land on the Chowan river. A colony of one hundred people moved from Nansemond County and settled on a portion of this grant on the south bank of the river a few miles from its mouth, making there the first permanent settlement in the present limits of the State. About the same time, George Durant and Samuel Pricklove bought from the Indians large tracts of land on the Perquimans river.

Friendliness of the Natives.—These early settlers found the Indians very friendly and even hospitable. Every day some of the natives came where the white people were building their homes and looked on with a great deal of interest. They were willing to assist the settlers and quite a number were employed by the white men to help in the work of building houses and planting the crops. The settlers were kind to them and paid them well for their work and whatever they bought from them.

New Englanders on the Cape Fear.—Early in 1660, some adventurers from Massachusetts began a settlement on Old Town Creek near the mouth of the Cape Fear River in the present county of Brunswick. For a few beads and other trinkets they bought some land from the Indians, and

brought in cattle from Virginia and New England to begin a stock farm. They were not successful in cattle raising, for the land was not so suitable for pasturage as they had supposed.

Trouble with the Natives.—It is said that when the enterprising New Englanders saw that their cattle raising was a failure, they began to kidnap some of the Indian children and send them away to be sold into slavery. According to one story, the Yankee settlers persuaded the natives to allow them to take their children ostensibly to Boston to go to school. Permission was given, but instead of the children being carried to Boston they were taken to Cuba and sold to the Spaniards. This deception was practiced for months, the natives believing the words of the white men; but after awile the Indian parents began to get uneasy when their children did not come back to spend a vacation at home. They went to the white men and demanded that their children be brought back. The New Englanders promised to do so, but, as they could not fulfill their promise, they fled from the country to escape the vengeance of the red men.

Such is the story. Whether it is true or false, it is known that the New England cattle-men abandoned their settlement very hurriedly, leaving upon the shores a sign-board warning others who might attempt to settle in the same place.

Other Settlers on the Albemarle.—North of the Albemarle sound several important settlements were made in 1662. George Durant bought from

the Indians large tracts of land in what is now known as Durant's Neck and opened that fine section up for settlers. Some of the men who located there were Thomas Keele, Thomas Roep, John Battle, Robert Peele, John Harvey, and Captain John Jenkins, who have many descendants now living in that part of the State. With these thrifty settlers steadily at work, a prosperous settlement soon sprang up.

QUESTIONS AND MAP STUDIES.

1. What States now lie between 31 and 36 degrees of North latitude?
2. Where is Nansemond County?
3. Point out Old Town Creek; Cape Fear river.
4. Where is Boston? Cuba?
5. Point out Perquimans County. Durant's Neck.
6. What had been done between the year 1590 and 1650?
7. To whom did Charles I. give North Carolina?
8. What was the country named and in whose honor?
9. What did Sir Robert Heath do with the land?
10. Who explored a portion of the State in 1622?
11. Why were no settlements made at that time?
12. Who explored some of the eastern section in 1653? Tell how he pleased the Indians.
13. Relate the story of Roger Green's colony.
14. How did the settlers get along with the Indians?

15. Tell the story of the New Englanders on the Cape Fear.
16. Where did George Durant settle? What other colonists are mentioned?

CHAPTER V.

THE LORDS PROPRIETORS AND THE FUNDEMENTAL CONSTITUTIONS.

The Eight Lords Proprietors.—Early in 1663 some people in England found out that North Carolina was worth having, for in a year eight noblemen petitioned king Charles II. for as much of the territory in the new world as the goodness of his heart would allow him to give them. King Charles was a big hearted but unwise man. He cared nothing for the wilds of North Carolina and was glad of the opportunity to grant the request of these eight powerful noblemen. He, therefore, gave to them all the land covered by the Heath grant of over thirty years before. The grantees were Edward, Earl of Clarendon; George, Duke of Albemarle; William, Earl of Craven; John, Lord Berkeley; Anthony, Lord Ashley; Sir George Carteret; Sir John Colleton; and Sir William Berkeley, the last being at the time governor of Virginia. These men were called the Lords Proprietors of Carolina, and were given the entire control of the province, which retained the name of Carolina, probably this time in honor of Charles II.

Privileges Offered Settlers.—When the Lords Proprietors took possession, by proxy, of their big

tract of land, they found many people already living on it Roger Green's Colony was there as was also the settlement on Durant's Neck. Other people had come from Virginia and had established themselves at different points along the banks of the Albemarle sound, the Chowan, and the Roanoke rivers. These were not disturbed in their possessions, but were allowed to hold their estates under the Lords Proprietors, who were very anxious not only to retain the settlers already there but to secure others. The Proprietors held out, therefore, extra inducements to prospective planters. An offer of one hundred acres of land free was made to every man who would move in, and a promise to sell him afterwards at a definitely low price as much as he wanted in addition. The setters also were given the privilege of local self government and the right to chose thirteen men from whom the proprietors would appoint a governor and six councillors.

The First Governor Appointed.—Before the settlers had time to select the thirteen men according to the charter, it became necessary to have a governor appointed by another power. The Lords proprietors, living in England, wrote Governor William Berkeley of Virginia, one of their number, to visit the Albemarle settlements and, if necessary, appoint a governor to act until the plan agreed upon could be put into operation. Berkeley immediately selected William Drummond of Jamestown, Va., who came to the province in the fall of 1663 and began his official duties.

Settlement on the Cape Fear.—North Carolina was divided at that time into two counties, Albemarle and Clarendon. Albemarle embraced all the territory touching the Albemarle and the Pamlico Sounds and the rivers flowing into them. Clarendon was the county on the Cape Fear River. In 1665 about eight hundred people from the Barbadoes, an English possession in the West Indies, under the leadership of Sir John Yeamans, came to the Cape Fear and began a settlement upon its banks some distance below the present city of Wilmington. These people had gone to Barbadoes from England some years before, but had not prospered in their island home. Sir John Yeamans was appointed by the Lords Proprietors governor of Clarendon, and began at once the erection of homes and the clearing of farms. Upon Old Town Creek near where it empties into the Cape Fear a prosperous settlement was begun, which was called Charlestown.

The First General Assembly.—The same year, 1665, saw the first meeting af the General Assembly of Albemarle, which was composed of delegates, elected from the settlements in the province, and the governor and six councillors. It met for the purpose of making laws for the colony, a right which had been guaranteed by the first charter. There were no towns in the province, and so the assembly met at the house of one of the members. At this meeting of the Assembly, in addition to making laws for the colony it was decided to

petition the Lards Proprietors to alter the general law regarding land grants so as to make it similar to the Virginia law of the same kind. The petition was heard and granted the next year.

Death of Governor Drummond.—William Drummond served as governor of Albemarle four years, and was succeeded in 1667 by Samuel Stephens. Drummond went back to Jamestown to live and afterward became involved in a rebellion against Governor Berkeley of Virginia. The rebellion was led by Nathaniel Bacon, a young man of ability and popularity. Drummond gave his support to Bacon and thereby gained the ill-will of Berkeley. When the rebellion collapsed a short time afterward on account of the death of Bacon, Drummond was captured and brought before Governor Berkeley. "Mr. Drummond," said Berkeley, "I am more glad to see you than any man in Virginia. Mr. Drummond, you shall be hanged in half an hour." He was speedily taken to the gallows and hanged. Thus ended in seeming disgrace the life of the first governor of North Carolina. Lake Drummond in the Dismal Swamp perpetuates his name and honor.

The New Constitution.—Samuel Stephens became governor in the fall of 1667. Before leaving England a new constitution was drawn up for North Carolina, and Stephens was charged with the responsibility of putting it into execution. According to the constitution the Assembly was to be composed of the governor, a council of ewelve men, and twelve delegates chosen by the

people. Of the twelve councilors, six were to be appointed by the governor and six elected by the Assembly. To the Assembly was given the right to levy all taxes and to choose all officers of the province with the exception of the governor. It will be seen, therefore, that the early inhabitants of North Carolina had most of the rights their descendants fought for in 1775—1781.

Some of the First Laws.—The second meeting of the Assembly and the first under the new constitution was held in 1669. At this session several notable laws were made. One was that no man, who owed a debt before coming to North Corolina, could be made by process of law to pay it until he had been in the province five years. This law gave the people of Virginia a pretext for calling North Carolina "Rogue's Harbor," on account of which hard feelings existed for a time between the people of Virginia and those of North Carolina. Another law was passed making it legal for persons to marry by simply declaring their purpose in the presence of competent witnesses. As no ministers of the church were then living in North Carolina that law was necessary. All settlers were exempt from the payment of taxes for one year after becoming residents, and no one was allowed to sell his land until he had owned it two years. Such were some of the crude but necessary laws of that time.

The Fundamental Constitutions.—The constitution which Samuel Stephens brought over did not suit the Lords Proprietors very well. It gave too

many rights to the people to be exactly in keeping with the spirit of the times. So Lord Shaftsbury, one of the proprietors, employed John Locke, a famous philosopher of England, to assist him in framing another constitution for North Carolina. Together these astute men wrote a long document which was called the Fundamental Constitutions and which the Lords Proprietors adopted as the constitution of North Carolina. By this document the oldest one of the proprietors became palatine, or chief ruler of the province. The other proprietors were given subordinate offices, chancellors, stewards, admirals, chamberlains, treasurers, and other high sounding titles. Then the settlers were to be landgraves, casiques, sachems, and other dignitaries. Nearly everybody in the province had a chance to become a nobleman of some sort, if this instrument called the Grand Model should be put into operation.

How the Constitution Failed.—The people of North Carolina were contrary enough not to like this constitution. Most of them were plain people who had no desire to be lords and ladies, nor did they like to have such as rulers. They had left England, many of them, to escape that very thing. So they paid no attention to the new constitution, but went on living under the old and giving no heed to the titled lords who came to be their governors. The Lords Proprietors changed the constitution several times in their effort to make it suit the people. In a few years, however, it became a dead letter and was abolished.

QUESTIONS AND MAP STUDIES.

1. Where is Lake Drummond? Where was Clarendon?
2. Where is the Island of Barbadoes?
3. Where was Jamestown?
4. Name the eight Lords Proprietors.
5. For whom was North Carolina named?
6. What people were already living here when the Lords Proprietors took charge?
7. What inducements were held out to settlers?
8. Who had the right to make laws for the province?
9. Who was the first governor?
10. Name the two counties at that time.
11. Where and how was Clarendon settled?
12. When did the first Assembly meet?
13. What petition was made to the proprietors?
14. Tell about the death of Governor Drummond.
15. Who composed the Grand Assembly? What were its rights?
16. Why was North Carolina called "Rogue's Harbor?"
17. What was its law about marriage? The land Law?
18. Who wrote the Fundamental Constitutions?
19. Why was it unpopular?
20. Why was it finally abolished?

CHAPTER VI.

TROUBLE IN THE ALBEMARLE COLONY.

A New Governor Chosen.—Governor Stephens died in 1674. He had been governor of the province for seven years, and administered the affairs of his office in a way that gave satisfaction to most of the people. As soon as practicable after his death the Assembly met and elected Peter Carteret to serve until a governor could be sent from England. Cateret was at the time speaker of the Assembly and very popular with the settlers.

Restlessness in the Colony.—At that time there was extreme restlessness in the colony on account of some laws that had been made in England relating to matters in America. One of these laws prohibited the colonists from selling their produce in any country except England, or from sending their goods even to England except in English ships. An amendment to that law made the carrying of products from one colony to another for purpose of trade liable to a tax. The law without the amendment was passed in 1653 and was known as the Navigation Act. The amendment was passed during the administration of Governor Stephens and was the immediate cause of the trouble, for the business of North Carolina, at the time, was

chiefly with New England traders who had been coming to Albemarle for several years and had been gladly received by the settlers. Trade with them was exceedingly profitable and the colonists were anxious to continue it. Accordingly they raised the standard of revolt and declared that their rights as free men were being invaded.

Eastchurch and Miller.—Thomas Eastchurch and Thomas Miller were the leaders in these agitations. Eastchurch was speaker of the Assembly and Miller was one of the members. They told the governor that he would not be allowed to enforce the Navigation Act. Miller declared that he would head a rebellion against the governor if the latter attempted to cary out the provisions of the law. For this bold speech he was arrested and sent to Jamestown for trial. He was shortly afterwards, however, released.

Theachery of Eastchurch.—Meanwhile the Assembly had elected Eastchurch a special messenger to go to England and complain to the Lords Proprietors. When he reached London, Eastchurch met up with Miller, who had gone there to complain of the treatment he had received from Governor Carteret. These two men went with their complaints before the Lords Proprietors, but instead of condemning the Navigation laws they entered into a bargain to enforce them. They forgot the ugly things they had said in North Carolina about the Navigation Act, and now promised to go back and help compel the colonists to obey it. In consideration of these promises, Eastchurch

was appointed governor and Miller was made collector of customs and secretary to the governor. Thus these two men, who had been the champions of the people, became in a brief time the representatives of their oppressors. Loaded with honors they soon left England for North Carolina.

Governor Carteret Resigns His Office.—Without waiting to see what Eastchurch would do in England, Governor Carteret resigned his office and returned to England. He declared that the people of North Carolina were headstrong and unruly. For some months after his departure, there was no governor of North Carolina.

Arrival of Miller.—On the voyage to North Carolina Governor Eastchurch and his secretary stopped for a few days rest at the island of Nevis in the West Indies. While there Eastchurch fell deeply in love with a beautiful Creole lady and almost forgot that he was governor of North Carolina. He decided to remain at Nevis to press his suit for the fair Creole's affection and send Miller on to North Carolina to act as governor, collector of customs, and deputy until he should come later. Miller came and took charge of the affairs of the province in 1677.

Downfall of Miller.—Soon after his arrival Miller began his work as collector as well as his duties as acting governor. In a very short while he had collected enough revenue to pay himself about five thousand dollars in fees. As governor he officially announced that the Navigation Act together with its amendments would be enforced.

and that the New England traders would have to pay the tax according to law. The settlers got some of their English blood up and determined that Governor and Collector Miller should have some trouble in carrying out the law. Feelings ran high. One day a ship from Massachusetts came into the Perquimans River and began to unload its cargo and to take on tobacco. Acting Governor Miller heard of the arrival of the ship and hastened to the scene. He went on board with his officers; and when Gillam, the captain, refused to pay the tax, he was promptly arrested. George Durant, who was present, complained of the injustice of the act, and was seized and thrown into prison. The settlers were displeased at such arbitary display of power and under the leadership of John Culpeper, who had shortly before fled from South Carolina to escape punishment for some misdeeds, went to Miller's house, seized and locked him up, and turned George Durant out.

Culpeper Becomes Governor.—Miller thus being brought to a sudden halt in prison and Eastchurch still lingering at Nevis, it became necessary for somebody to assume the reins of government. The Assembly met and elected John Culpeper Deputy Governor and Collector of Customs. Thus it was that North Carolina had three governors at the same time, one on the island of Nevis, another in prison, and the third in office. Culpeper remained in office for about two years, during which time the colonists traded with whomsoever

they pleased and the New England traders came and went at will.

Return of Eastchurch.—Meanwhile Governor Eastchurch had married the Creole and now remembered that he was governor of North Carolina. With his bride he left Nevis and came to Albemarle in 1679. He was surprised to find that a revolution had taken place, Miller in prison, and Culpeper reigning in his stead. With the boldness, however, of a man with the right on his side he ordered the usurper to surrender the office, but Culpeper refused to obey. Eastchurch then went to Virginia to ask aid. There he found many sympathizers who promised to aid him in his efforts. In the midst of his preparations, however, to return to North Carolina, he was taken sick, and soon afterwards died.

Downfall of Culpeper.—Shortly after the death of Eastchurch, Thomas Miller succeeded in making his escape from prison and went to London. There before the Lords Proprietors he accused Culpeper of rebellion and robbery. Culpeper was summoned to England for trial. He obeyed, and there surrendered all title to the office of governor. He was tried for treason but acquitted. Later he went to South Carolina and laid the plan for the City of Charleston. In this so called Culpeper Rebellion the people of North Carolina exhibited the same spirit of resistance to tyranny that their descendants did in the Revolution of 1776. They resisted the enforcement of an un-

just law, overturned the proprietary government, and set up one for themselves.

QUESTIONS AND MAP STUDIES.

1. Where is New England? London? Nevis?
2. How long was Samuel Stephens governor of North Carolina?
3. Who succeeded Stephens?
4. What unjust law was passed in England? What amendment? Why unjust?
5. Who had been trading with the colonists?
6. What did Eastchurch and Miller do about the Navigation Act?
7. How did they deceive the people?
8. What offices were they appointed to?
9. What did Governor Carteret do?
10. Why did Eastchurch delay at Nevis?
11. Whom did he send to North Carolina?
12. What did he do on his arrival?
13. What did the people do?
14. When Eastchurch came what did he find?
15. Why did he go to Virginia?
16. What became of Eastchurch?
17. How was the trouble between Miller and Culpeper settled?
18. How was this rebellion like the Revolution of 1776?

CHAPTER VII.

FIVE YEARS OF MISRULE.

Succession of Several Governors.—For more than a year after the Culpeper Rebellion, North Carolina got along as best it could without a regularly appointed governor. In 1679, however, Seth Southwell, who had bought Lord Clarendon's share in Carolina, was appointed governor, and at once set out for his post of duty. On his way across the ocean he was captured by a pirate ship and held a prisoner for three years. As soon as it became known what had happened to Southwell, the Lords Proprietors selected John Harvey to serve until the pirates should release him. Harvey served for about six months and resigned. John Jenkins succeeded Harvey, but died in a few months and was followed by Henry Wilkinson who served until Southwell arrived in 1683.

Southwell a Bad Governor.—Southwell was released by the pirates upon the payment of a ransom, and at once came to North Carolina to assume his duties. Soon thereafter the people of the province had good reason for wishing that the pirates had held on to Southwell for good and all, for he soon proved to be a very bad man. One of his first acts was to break up the trade with the

New Englanders, which he accomplished by reason of the fact that he was not only governor, but a Lord Proprietor as well. Next, he ordered the settlers to cease all trade with their Indian neighbors. Although there was no law against such trade, Southwell ordered it stopped. He then secretly began trading with the Indians himself.

Seizure of a Merchant Vessel.—One day there came into the Pasquotank river a merchant vessel from Barbadoes. Under the pretext that the ship was a pirate's craft Governor Southwell had the captain seized and put into prison. It was known generally that the vessel was not a pirate ship, but no one dared to oppose the governor when he sold the cargo and pocketed the money.

Overthrow of the Tyrant.—Southwell's tyranny and bad conduct continued for five years before the people rose in rebellion against him. The colony had already suffered much from strife, and peace at almost any price was greatly desired. At last, however, the patience of the settlers became exhausted, and they resolved to take matters in their own hands. Led by George Durant a considerable body of the colonists went to the governor's house and demanded that he resign the office of governor. On his refusal they seized him and locked him up in a covered pen made of pine logs, which was called a jail. Surprised at this treatment Southwell asked what they were going to do with him. He was told that he was to be sent to England for trial. With tears he begged that he be tried before the Assembly of the pro-

vince, for he was ashamed to be tried in England. His request was granted, and in the trial that followed he was found guilty of almost every crime mentioned in the law books. He was removed from office and banished for a year.

Formation of New Precints.—During Southwell's five years of misrule the precincts of Currituck, Pasquotank, Perquimans, Bertie, and Chowan were formed. Before that time the entire northeastern part of the province was divided into the precints of Carteret, Berkley, and Shaftsbury, named in honor of certain ones of the Lords Proprietors. Now the three were made into four and given Indian names instead.

Abandonment of Clarendon.—The settlement of Charleston in 1670 proved to be the death of the Clarendon colony. Settlers on the Cape Fear began, soon after that event, to move southward. Finally John Yeamans, governor of Clarendon, was appointed chief executive of South Carolina, and he left the colony on the Cape Fear to take up his duties at Charleston. The colonists followed soon afterward, and by 1690 the settlement on the Cape Fear had disappeared.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who was appointed governor in 1679? What happened to him on his way to North Carolina?
2. Name the governors that served until Southwell came?

3. Tell something of Southwell's arbitary acts.
4. Relate the story of the merchant vessel.
5. Give the story of Southwell's downfall.
6. What precincts were formed during that time?
7. Why was Clarendon abandoned?

CHAPTER VIII.

REVOLT OF THE QUAKERS.

Ludwell Becomes Governor.—After the banishment of Seth Southwell in 1688, North Carolina was without a governor for about a year; but in 1689 the Lords Proprietors sent over Philip Ludwell to fill the difficult position of governor of Albemarle. He proved to be a wise and skillful ruler. For four years he was at the head of affairs in North Carolina, and managed so well that the people liked him and wanted him continued in office. A change in the plans of the Lords Proprietors, however, brought about a new condition of affairs. North and South Carolina were united into one province under the name of Carolina with the seat of government at Charleston. Ludwell was made the first governor of Carolina and went to Charleston in 1693, where he took up his larger duties.

Lillington and Harvey.—Before leaving for Charleston, Governor Ludwell appointed Alexander Lillington deputy governor of North Carolina, and entrusted him with the full administration of the government of the northern province. Lillington attempted to enforce the provisions of the Navigation Act, but he had good sense enough to give up the attempt when he saw that it was un-

popular. Not succeeding very well in governmental affiairs he was removed from office in 1694 and Thomas Harvey was appointed in his stead. The same year Governor Ludwell retired from his position as chief-executive of the two Carolinas, and in August of that year John Archdale, a Friend and one of the Lords Proprietors, was selected for that honorable post. Archdale was one of the best governors of those early days. He visited the province of Albemarle and encouraged the settlers in their work, and became in reality a friend and helper of the people. He continued Thomas Harvey as deputy governor, a man wise enough not to attempt to enforce the Navigation Act, nor to try to influence commercial conditions.

Five Years Without a Governor.—Thomas Harvey died in 1699, and for five years North Carolina seems to have been neglected by the Lords Proprietors and the governor at Charleston, for no deputy governor was appointed for that time. There was now about six thousand people living in North Carolina. Henderson Walker, a lawyer of ability living in Albemarle, was president of the Assembly, and by virtue of his office became acting governor. Walker was one of the best rulers that Albemarle had yet had. During the five years of his wise and considerate rule the province grew and prospered as never before. In the midst of large plans, however, for the colony, he died in 1704 at the early age of forty-four.

Establishing a Church.—During Henderson Walker's administration, there had been consid-

erable agitation relative to the establishment of the Church of England as the State church in North Carolina. There was much opposition to it, for most of the people were what were called dissenters, people who did not hold to the doctrines of the Church of England. Robert Daniel who had been appointed governor was a great church-man and greatly desired to have the Church of England made the church of the province. Under his influence the Assembly passed a law setting aside a certain part of the revenue of the colony for the support of the ministry of the established church and to build parish houses. This act, in effect, made the Church of England (the Episcopal) the established church of North Carolina. The law, however, had to be approved by the Lords Proprietors and the Soverign of England. Governor Daniel was highly pleased at his success in having a tax levied for the support of the ministry, but he found out that making a law and making the people obey were different things.

The Law Strongly Opposed.—At that time the majority of the people in the province were Friends, or Quakers, Presbyterians, and Baptists. All of these united in opposing the law. Governor Daniel, however, had parishes established, churches built, and taxes levied, notwithstanding the fact that the law had not been approved in England and the people in Albemarle were bitterly opposed to it. The Friends, who were the most outspoken in their opposition to the governor's demands, declared that they would neither pay the tax nor

recognize the Church of England in any way whatever.

Mission of Edmund Porter.—Governor Daniel declared his purpose to force the collection of the taxes and the obedience of the people. The dissenters, however, resolved to fight the law to the bitter end; and for that purpose sent Edmund Porter to England as a special ambassador to the Lords Proprietors. Porter appeared before the Lords and urged them to disapprove the law, but that honorable body was not ready to act. He then laid the matter before the British parliament, and that body by a resolution declared that the law was contrary to the charter of the province, oppressive, and should be repealed. Porter was energetic enough to bring the matter also to the attention of Queen Anne, who was then on the English throne. She became interested and pronounced the law null and void, giving it as her opinion that the people of North Carolina were right in resisting it.

Removal of Daniel From Office.—Edmund Porter, after getting the annulment of the church law, petitioned the Lords Proprietors for the removal of Governor Daniel from office, giving as his reason that the unwise activity of that officer in trying to enforce a law before it had been approved at headquarters had rendered him extremely unpopular in North Carolina. His argument soon bore fruit, for shortly thereafter Daniel was recalled and Thomas Carey put in his place.

Extension of Settlements.—During these troub-

lous times, new settlements had been made in different parts of the province. South of Albemarle Sound and on the Pamlico River prosperous communities had sprung up. The town of Bath, the oldest in the State, was incorporated in 1705. The country on both sides of the Pamlico was being rapidly populated. As far west as the Neuse River bold pioneers had found their way and were planting the seeds of a vigorous community. Newbern was settled in 1710 by a colony of Swiss refugees from the neighborhood of Berne, the capital of Switzerland. A colony of German Palatines also, under the Baron de Graffenreid, joined the Swiss on the Neuse traveling through the country from Virginia, where they landed, and the two peoples laid the foundation of a community that soon came to be the leading one in the province.

QUESTIONS AND MAP STUDIES.

1. Point out Charleston; Bath; Newbern.
2. Trace the course of the Neuse river; the Pamlico.
3. Who was appointed governor in 1688? How was he liked?
4. What law did Lillington fail to enforce?
5. How long was the colony without a governor? Who was at the head of the affairs at that time?
6. What church did Governor Daniel attempt to establish in North Carolina?

7. Give an account of his effort and the result.
8. Tell of Porter's mission to England and what he accomplished.
9. Give an account of the settlements made during this time.

CHAPTER IX.

THE GOVERNORS AND THE PEOPLE.

Governor Carey Offends the People.—Change of governors brought no relief to the people of North Carolina. Governor Carey soon showed that he was no better than Daniel, for he offended a large number of the settlers worse than they had ever been before. He seemed specially hostile to the Friends; for no sooner had he become governor than he revived an old law, that had become obsolete, which required every man elected to a public office to take the oath of allegiance to Queen Anne. All that seemed good enough to do, but it was against the religious scruples of the Friends to take an oath at all. They claimed the right to hold up the right hand and affirm. That, however, did not suit Governor Carey, and so he announced that they would have either to take the oath or give up the offices. But the Friends were as headstrong in this as Governor Carey was, and continued to hold the offices to which they had been elected. This angered Carey very much and he made up his mind to bring the rebellious people to terms.

Non-Collection of Fines.—Carey was determined to enforce the law. He, therefore, levied a fine of five pounds, or twenty-five dollars, upon

every officer who had not taken the oath; but he could not collect the fines. The office-holders would neither pay the fines nor give up the offices, and so the trouble had deepened.

Ambassador John Porter.—At that time there was an able and well known man living in North Carolina named John Porter, who was leading the people in their opposition to the unjust demands of Governor Carey. Porter was severe in denouncing Carey and said that he should be impeached. Most of the people agreed with Porter and sent him to England as a special messenger to petition the Lords Proprietors for the removal of Carey from office. Porter succeeded not only in having Carey removed but also in getting authority to convene the Council for the election of his successor. Thus the colonial messenger returned clothed with more power than had ever been given to anybody in North Carolina before. He was authorized to turn out one governor and to put in another.

Election of William Glover.—The council met and elected William Glover, a member of the Church of England. Glover was, at that time, living in North Carolina and was well known to most of the people; but after assuming the governorship he showed no disposition to end the troubles. He was as urgent as Carey had been in enforcing the law about oath-taking and tried to force the collection of fines. The dissenters were much disappointed in him and denounced him for his seeming treachery.

Governor Glover Deposed by the Assembly.—John Porter was very much disturbed over the situation, and demanded an election of delegates by the people to which body the question of the chief magistracy should be referred. When the delegates met, Porter went before them and bitterly denounced Glover, and declared his election illegal. The Assembly took a vote upon the question and by a large majority declared the election illegal, thus deposing Glover and declaring the office vacent. The Assembly went further and re-elected Thomas Carey to the vacancy, probably by the influence of John Porter and Edward Moseley, who had doubtless come to some agreement with Carey, as to his future conduct toward the Friends.

Two Governor's at the Same Time.—Although Glover had been voted out, he refused to surrender the office, declaring that the action of the Assembly in deposing him was rebellion and treason. Without heeding Glover's words, Carey also began to perform the duties of governor. Thus North Carolina had two governors at the same time each claiming to be the rightful chief executive. Things looked squally and civil war was threatened.

Two Assemblies Convene.—It was thought best to refer the matter to the people. Governor Glover issued a proclamation calling for the election of another Assembly. Governor Carey also issued a call for an election. The voting took place all over the province on the same day and when the votes were counted it was seen that a majority of

Glover delegates had been chosen. Edward Moseley, a strong supporter of Carey, charged that the election in some precincts was fraudulent; and demanded that another election be held. Glover was satisfied with the result and refused to order another election, but Carey and his party held a second election and chose delegates from all the precincts. Hence there were two sets of delegates and consequently two assemblies meeting at the same time and place. Carey's Assembly elected Edward Moseley speaker and proceeded to business. The law reviving the test oath was repealed, and the deposition of Glover was declared legal. The other Assembly met in another room of the same house and reaffirmed the election of Glover and condemned Carey and his adhearents.

Flight of Glover.—Shortly after the adjournment of the two Assemblies, matters hastened to a crisis and armed conflicts were narrowly averted. Seeing that the Carey party was aggressive and numerous, Governor Glover thought it prudent to retire to Virginia. Colonel Thomas Pollock, an earnest adherent of Glover, and other supporters thinking their lives in danger, fled also from the province and sought refuge in Virginia. Carey and his party were left in quiet possession of the government, which they administered without interruption until 1710.

Coming of Governor Hyde.—Edward Hyde was sent over as deputy-governor in 1710. He expected to get his commission from Governor Tynte

at Charleston, but when he arrived he was distressed to find that Tynte had died shortly before. Hyde was, therefore, a governor without a commission, and in the troublous condition of affairs he hesitated about taking charge. Carey, however, agreed to vacate the office and allow Hyde to take control. Governor Hyde was gladly welcomed by the people, for all felt that his coming would put an end to the troubles of the province. Carey promised obedience and friendship. Glover was but too glad to surrender his title to an empty honor.

Action of the Assembly.—Early in 1711 Governor Hyde called the Assembly together. Carey became alarmed at this call, for it was generally understood that the Assembly would call the last administration to account for its management of public matters. The Assembly met in March and immediately ordered the arrest of Carey, but the ex-governor refused to surrender. Governor Hyde sent officers to seize and bring him to trial. Carey prepared to resist and fortified his house, mounting two cannons at his front door.

Downfall of Carey.—The governor didn't go at once to take Carey by force, and the delay made Carey bold. He proclaimed himself governor for the third time, and issued a proclamation ordering Hyde to leave the province forthwith or he would come and hang him. Governor Hyde did not become at all alarmed, but quietly continued to exercise the duties of his office. Carey attempted to take Governor Hyde by force; but seeing that

Hyde was prepared to greet him with powder and ball, he retreated to his fortifications. Soon thereafter Governor Hyde went in search of Carey, but the latter fled to Virginia with a number of his adherents. At Jamestown he and John Porter were arrested on a charge of treason and sent to England for trial. They were, however, afterwards released without trial and returned to North Carolina. Thus ended the Carey rebellion, which had been the source of much trouble for several years.

QUESTIONS.

1. How did Carey offend the Friends?
2. What did Carey do about fines? Did he collect the fines?
3. Who was John Porter? Why did he go to England? Success?
4. Who was elected governor when Porter returned?
5. How did the new governor treat the Friends?
6. How did Carey again become governor?
7. How were there two governors at the same time?
8. What was done by the two Assemblies?
9. Why did Glover flee to Virginia?
10. What did Carey do when Governor Hyde came over?
11. Tell the story of the conflict between Hyde and Carey.
12. What was done with Carey and Porter?

CHAPTER X.

THE TUSCARORA WAR.

Plot to Destroy the Colony.—While the people of Albemarle were quarreling among themselves about the test oath and the establishment of a State church, the crafty Tuscarora Indians were plotting to destroy the entire colony. Thinking it was a good time to attack the colonists while thus divided, the savage chiefs agreed among themselves to fall upon the outlying settlements in various places at sunrise on September 22, 1711, and massacre every living being.

Murder of John Lawson.—Some time before the fatal day arrived a cruel thing happened on the Neuse river not far from Newbern. John Lawson, the surveyor-general of the province, and Baron de Graffenreid, the leader of the German and Swiss colony at Newbern, went up the Neuse river some twenty miles on a hunting trip. They did not know that the Indians had planned to set out upon the war-path, and were taken by surprise when the savages swooped down upon them, overpowered and carried them away as prisoners to their chief, Handcock, in the forests of what is now Greene County. The Indians specially hated Lawson, because they thought he sold their lands to the white settlers; and after sticking

lightwood splinters into his body and tying him to a stake, they burned him to death in a most horrible manner. At the same time and in the same manner, Lawson's negro slave was burned in sight of his master.

Escape of de Graffendreid.—Baron de Graffenreid would doubtless have shared the same fate, but for his thoughtfulness in telling the Indians that he was king of the settlement at Newbern. The red men agreed to let him go on condition that he would buy no more of the Indians land, nor take part in the war about to begin. De Graffenreid was glad enough to make those promises, and he was allowed to go free.

The Massacre of Settlers.—At sunrise, September 22, according to the well conceived plan, sixteen hundred Tuscarora warriors fell upon the unsuspecting colonists on the Roanoke, the Chowan, the Pamlico, and the Neuse rivers, and slew about two hundred men, women and children in the most merciless manner. Some of the colonists escaping from the first attack, fled to the swamps and were afterwards hunted down and slain, or died of starvation in the solitude of the wilderness before assistance could reach them. Nearly all of the frontier settlements staggered under this stunning blow which was the most disastrous that had ever befallen the province. The attack was all the more terrible because no one was expecting it, as the settlers seemed to have been on the very best of terms with the Indians even receiving the treacherous foes in their homes on the

most friendly terms the evening before the blow was struck. At once a cry of vengeance went up from the surviving colonists, and there was a settled determination in the hearts of all to drive the murderous tribe from the province.

Governor Hyde Appeals for Aid.—On account of the long strife that the colony had just passed through and the destruction wrought by the massacre, Governor Hyde was unable to collect a sufficient body of men to face the Indians in the field. He, therefore, dispatched messengers to Virginia and South Carolina to ask aid, and, in the meantime, organized the militia, and made as extensive preparation as his means would allow. Governor Spottswood of Virginia, owing to the failure of the house of Burgesses to appropriate money for the war, did not respond; but South Carolina responded. Colonel John Barnwell was put in command of one hundred white men and several hundred friendly Indians, and sent in haste to North Carolina, arriving, after a long and toilsome journey, in January, 1712.

Defeat of the Tuscaroras.—Colonel Louis Mitchell with a North Carolina regiment joined Barnwell at Newbern. The two leaders now thought themselves strong enough to attack the Indians and set out at once in search of them. Handcock, the chief of the Tuscaroras, had gathered together his warriors in a strong fort in the western part of what is now Craven County about twenty miles from Newbern, and there awaited the coming of the whites. Barnwell and Mitchell came into the

neighborhood of the fort on the 28th of January. The Indians marched out of the fort and attacked the whites, but were driven back with the loss of about three hundred killed and wounded. Colonel Barnwell then laid close seige to the fort, and soon had the savages begging for quarter. Colonel Mitchell had already made a breach in the wall with his artillery when he was ordered by Barnwell to cease firing. Without further bloodshed the stronghold was surrendered, but to the astonishment of all, Colonel Barnwell allowed the Indians to march out with the honors of war.

Colonel Barnwell Condemned.—Colonel Barnwell was severely condemned by the people of North Carolina for this seeming act of cowardice. Colonel Mitchell afterwards said that he could easily have captured the fort had he been allowed to do so. Barnwell entered into a treaty of peace with Handcock, which, however, the Indians were not slow to break. In justification of Colonel Barnwell it is said that he agreed to the terms of the treaty in order to save a number of white prisoners in the hands of Handcock.

QUESTIONS AND MAP STUDIES.

1. Point out Green County on the map.
2. Point out Craven County.
3. What were the Tuscaroras doing while the whites were quarreling among themselves?
4. What was the plot?

5. Tell the story of the adventure of John Lawson and de Graffenreid.
6. Tell the story of the massacre.
7. What did the colonists resolve to do?
8. Of whom did Governor Hyde ask aid?
9. Who came from South Carolina?
10. Who joined him at Newbern?
11. Tell the story of the defeat of the Indians.
12. Why was Barnwell condemned and what reason is given for his conduct?

CHAPTER XI.

END OF THE INDIAN WAR.

Tuscaroras Break the Treaty.—Soon after the capture of the Indian fort, the South Carolina Indians returned home to celebrate the funeral of those of their number that had been slain in battle. Colonel Barnwell also left for Charleston, leaving no troops in North Carolina except the few under Colonel Mitchell stationed at Newbern. The Tuscaroras seeing their opportunity immediately renewed the war, falling upon the remote settlements and butchering men, women, and children. It is not known how many were slain in these irregular and merciless attacks.

Hurried Preparations for War.—As soon as it became known that Handcock and his braves had again taken up the scalping knife, Governor Hyde began to make larger preparations than ever for the successful carrying on of the war. He called the Assembly together in March, 1712, and that body immediately voted four thousand pounds as a war fund, and passed an act requiring all able bodied men to take up arms for the public defense. There was a grim determination this time not to end the conflict until the hostile tribe had been exterminated. Governor Hyde assembled the mili-

tia of the province and dispatched messengers to Virginia and South Carolina for aid.

The Friendly Indians.—Several tribes of Indians refused to join the Tuscaroras in their war upon the whites. Even some of the Tuscaroras themselves took no part in the conflict. Tom Blunt, one of the most noted chiefs of the band living in what is now Washington and Beaufort counties, had advised Handcock against going into war, but that bloodthirsty chief refused the advice. Blunt, however, remained friendly to the settlers.

Aid from South Carolina.—As in the previous year, South Carolina alone responded to the call for aid. Governor Craven of that province replied that he would send a thousand men. Governor Spottswood of Virginia held in check the Indians in that province as they had begun to show signs of going to the aid of the Tuscaroras in North Carolina. Further than that Virginia offered no aid.

Death of Governor Hyde.—In the summer of 1712 a scourge of yellow fever broke out in the colony, and hundreds died from the disease. Among the victims was Governor Hyde, who died on the eighth of September. His death was a calamity to the province. Four days after the death of the governor, the council met and elected Colonel Thomas Pollock to the vacancy. Colonel Pollock was, perhaps, the ablest man in the province and the one best fitted for the position. He entered at once upon the duties of the office and soon inspired courage and confidence among the

Old Indian Fort, still Standing, three miles east of Salisbury, N. C

hitherto disheartened colonists. He visited every part of the province and revived hope and determination in the bosom of the people. He got into touch with the friendly Indians and not only kept them on peaceful terms, but even in some instances succeeded in getting them to take up arms against the hostile tribes.

Treaty with Tom Blunt.—Governor Pollock visited Tom Blunt and persuaded him to join in the war against Handcock and his tribe. The wary chief did not like to fight against his own people, but Pollock promised him lands on the Pamlico sound and the title of king after the war was over, if he would enlist in the service of the colony. Finally Blunt consented, but requested that he might make war only upon the Matchepungos around Mattamusket lake, the Corees of Carteret county, and the Catechneys of the upper Neuse river; for he said that he could not bring destruction upon his own people. This request was granted and he and his Tuscaroras rendered good service in that trying time.

Building of Forts.—Governor Pollock had forts built in various sections of the province as protection for the settlers against the Indians. One was built on Core sound near the present town of Beaufort, manned by thirty men, and named Fort Hyde in honor of the late governor. Another was built on the Tar river in the present county of Edgecombe and garrisoned by ten men. Blockhouses and palisades were erected at many places

to furnish refuge for the colonists in times of danger.

Handcock and his braves had also built two forts, one in what is now Greene County, near the present town of Snow Hill, and another twenty miles farther north. These forts were called "Nahucke" and "Cahunche". In these two strongholds had been placed all the valuables of the tribe, together with the women, children, and old men.

South Carolina Troops Arrive.—In December the soldiers from South Carolina arrived in Newbern, one thousand Yamassee Indians and fifty white men under the command of Colonel James Moore. On account of the scarcity of provisions in the Neuse settlements, the regiment was wintered in Albemarle.

Attack on Fort Nahucke.—Early in February, 1713, Colonel Moore moved from Albemarle against Fort Nahucke. After delaying at Fort Reading for some days, the little army came to the Indian country about the middle of March. The savages retired before the whites and sought the protection of their palisades. Colonel Moore laid close siege to the fort on the 20th of March, and made several assaults upon the Indian stronghold, but without success. Finally, however, the South Carolina Indians burst into the fort and engaged the Tuscaroras in a hand to hand conflict. Handcock, seeing that all was lost, broke through the ranks of his enemies, and, followed by a portion of his warriors, fled to Fort Cahuncke. The remainder of the Indian gar-

rison, about eight hundred in all, surrendered. About two hundred had been killed in the attack. Colonel Moore lost about fifty killed and one hundred wounded.

Tuscaroras Driven from the Province.—Moore followed up his success by marching at once upon Fort Cahuncke. The Indians, however, did not await his arrival; but fled in haste further up the Neuse river. Handcock and the remnant of his tribe continued their flight through Virginia, Maryland, and Pennsylvania to New York, where they joined their kinsmen, the Iroquois, making the sixth nation of that confederacy. Thus was North Carolina rid of the hostile Tuscaroras, none but Blunt and his band remaining in the province.

QUESTIONS AND MAP STUDIES.

1. Locate Washington and Beaufort Counties.
2. Where is Mattamuskeet lake? Carteret County?
3. Point out Core sound; Beaufort; Edgecombe County.
4. Locate Greene County; Snow Hill.
5. What did Colonel Barnwell do after the capture of the fort?
6. Why did the Tuscaroras renew the war?
7. How did Governor Hyde get ready for war?
8. What Indians were friendly? Who was Tom Blunt?
9. What did Governor Craven promise?

10. What was the fatal result of the yellow fever scourge?
11. Who succeeded Governor Hyde?
12. Relate his dealings with Tom Blunt.
13. What Forts were built? Why built?
14. Where were the Indian forts?
15. What troops came from South Carolina?
16. Where did they winter?
17. Tell the story of the capture of Fort Nahucke.
18. What were the losses on each side?
19. What became of Handcock and the remnant of his tribe?
20. What Indians remained in the province?

CHAPTER XII.

RECOVERY FROM THE INDIAN WAR.

Colonel Moore Returns Home.—After the fall of Fort Nahucke the South Carolina Indians loaded with spoils returned home. Colonel Moore delayed his going long enough to check a rising among the tribes on the shores of the Pamlico sound and to allay the discontent of the natives in what is now Beaufort, Craven, and Carteret counties, when he, too, returned to Charleston after having received the thanks of a grateful people. The war had been brought to a successful conclusion and peace was now assured.

King Blunt.—In consideration of his services against the hostile tribes in the war just closed, Tom Blunt was granted by the Assembly a large tract of land on the Pamlico river and proclaimed king of all the Indians that remained in that part of the province. Governor Pollock was glad to honor, in this way, the faithful chief who had reduced to subjection the warlike Cotechneys and Matchepungos. Shortly afterward, however, Blunt's reservation was changed from the Pamlico to the Roanoke. A beautiful tract of land on the banks of the latter river was selected and alloted to the friendly Indians. Here they dwelt many years in peace with their white neighbors, but later

sold all their possessions and moved to the Great Lakes, where they joined the other Tuscaroras who had gone before. King Blunt lived to be an old man and always maintained friendly relations with the whites. The reservation on which he lived in Bertie county is still called the "Indian Woods."

Bills of Credit Issued.—When the Assembly met in 1713 it was seen that the province was heavily in debt. The Lords Proprietors had failed to furnish the money needed to pay the expenses of the war, and Governors Hyde and Pollock had been compelled to borrow the necessary funds. The promise to pay when the war ended was now beginning to give no little trouble. To relieve the situation, the Assembly voted to issue bills of credit to the amount of forty thousand dollars. It was the first paper money ever issued in North Carolina and was a legal tender only in the payment of claims growing out of the war.

New Governor Sent Over.—In July, 1713, the Lords Proprietors appointed Charles Eden governor. In the spring of the following year he arrived from England and at once began his duties. Among other things he was instructed not to allow settlements to be made more than twenty miles west of the Neuse and Trent rivers. In this way the Lords Proprietors sought to prevent an expansion of the province. Ever since the time of the Carey rebellion the Proprietors had taken no special interest in the colony. Their profits in rents were small and they consequently were in-

different as to the welfare of a people that seemed so rebellious. In quit rents, only about six thousand dollars were annually collected, and, after paying expenses, each Proprietor received only about one hundred dollars. As might be supposed, therefore, they cared very little about the welfare of the province. Even during the Indian war they paid no attention to Governor Pollock's appeal for aid. Their appointment, therefore, of a governor at this time and instructions to him to limit the growth of the settlements did not meet with hearty approval.

Indian War in South Carolina.—In 1715 a terrible Indian war broke out in South Carolina. The Yamassees, who had fought under Barnwell and Moore against the Tuscaroras, now entered into a plot to destroy the southern colony. Without warning they fell furiously upon the scattered settlements on the frontier, and in a few days massacred about four hundred people. Governor Craven appealed to North Carolina for aid. Governor Eden was quick to respond and sent Colonel Maurice Moore with a regiment of militia to the relief of the distressed and terrified settlers. Colonel Moore had come from South Carolina with Colonel James Moore in 1713, but after the Tuscarora war he remained and became a resident of North Carolina. He now aided in reducing the Yamassees to submission, and was afterward thanked by a vote of the South Carolina Legislature and rewarded by a gift of five hundred dollars in gold. Later he was prominent in the third and successful attempt

to settle the Cape Fear country, which occurred in 1722.

More Paper Money Issued.—At the session of the Assembly in 1715 a bill was passed ordering the issue of one hundred thousand dollars in currency, which was made legal tender except in payment of quit rents. At the same session the Church of England was made by law the established church of the province. It was provided, however, that there should be no tax for the support of the church and there was to be full liberty of conscience. The test oath, which had been a dead letter ever since the Carey rebellion, was now abolished. Thus were compromised two matters that had given serious trouble for over ten years.

Edward Moseley.—Edward Moseley was, at that time, one of the ablest men in the province. He was a skillful lawyer and a shrewd politician. For many years he was speaker of the Assembly and the leader of the people in their resistance to the unjust laws of the Proprietors. Along with others he claimed that the Lords Proprietors ought to receive their quit-rents in the paper money of the colony, instead of insisting upon payments in gold and silver. To present this claim to their lordships a committee, consisting of Edward Moseley, John Porter, the younger William Swann, and others, was sent to England, but their mission was a failure as the Proprietors refused to hear them. Returning to America, however, Moseley kept up the agitation. Together with Colonel Maurice Moore he went, in 1718, to Edenton, then the Capi-

tal of the province, and took by force some papers from the governor's office. For this act of trespass Moseley and Moore were arrested. Moore was released, but Moseley, who had also said some harsh words about the governor, was brought to trial, convicted, fined, and debarred from practicing law in the province.

Edenton.—The town that had grown up near the mouth of Queen Anne's Creek was named Edenton in honor of Governor Eden. It early became the capital of the province and the most important town.

QUESTIONS AND MAP STUDIES.

1. Locate the Trent river; Queen Anne's Creek, Edenton.
2. When did Colonel Moore return to Charleston?
3. How was Tom Blunt rewarded for his services?
4. Why were bills of credit issued? What amount?
5. Who was appointed governor in 1713?
6. What instructions did he have from the Proprietors?
7. Why were the Proprietors careless about affairs in the province?
8. How did North Carolina repay South Carolina for her aid in the Tuscarora war?
9. What other bills of credit were issued?

10. How was the church question settled? The test oath?
11. Who was Edward Moseley and for what was he noted?
12. What was the result of his mission to England?
13. For what were Moseley and Moore arrested? The result?
14. What is said of Edenton?

CHAPTER XIII.

THE PIRATE BLACKBEARD AND OTHERS.

Extent of Piracy.—During the latter part of the seventeenth and the beginning of the eighteenth century, North Carolina waters were infested by bold and blood-thirsty buccaneers. Chief among these terrors of the sea were Steed Bonnet, Richard Worley, and Edward Teach. The Island of Providence in the West Indies was their trysting place, whence they set out upon their piratical cruises and whither they returned after their adventures upon the deep. In 1717 Captain Woods Rogers, commanding a squadron of the English Navy, attacked the pirates at Providence, killing and capturing some and putting others to flight. Bonnet, Worley and Teach, with their crews, fled in haste to the waters of North Carolina, Bonnet and Worley making their headquarters in the lower Cape Fear river and Teach in the Pamlico sound. From about 1717 to 1720 these bold corsairs made shipping on the coast of North Carolina an exceedingly hazardous undertaking.

Death of Steed Bonnet.—Steed Bonnet, with a brave and enterprising band of adventurers, confined his depredations largely to the coast of South Carolina, and was especially troublesome to the people of that province. At length Captain Wil-

liam Rhett was sent from Charleston with a sloop of war in pursuit of him. Bonnet was overtaken in the Cape Fear, and in the battle which followed he was captured with thirty of his men, all of whom were carried to Charleston and forthwith hanged.

Worley Captured and Executed.—Near the close of 1717, Governor Johnson, of South Carolina, went in search of Worley and found him just outside the bar of Charleston. The governor in his man-of-war gave the pirate battle, and after a desperate conflict succeeded in capturing Worley and the survivors of his crew, the greater number of whom having been killed in the battle. Worley himself was dangerously wounded, and for fear that the gallows would be cheated, the governor immediately ordered him, along with other prisoners, to be hanged.

Black Beard.—The most daring and cruel of these freebooters yet remained. Edward Teach, well-known as Black Beard, was carrying on his villianies in the Pamlico and Albemarle Sounds. This bold and bad man was a native of Bristol, England. At first he was a privateer, but later entered upon his career as a pirate. He wore long hair and a jet black beard which covered his chest. When on a cruise he plaited his long beard and wound it round his ears. To the ends of the plaits he fastened candles, which he lighted at night when going into battle in order to make himself look frightful to his enemies.

Capture of Samuel Wragg.—Black Beard's

boat, named "Queen Anne's Revenge," mounted forty guns and had a crew of one hundred men. Cruising off the coast of South Carolina in the summer of 1718, he captured a merchant vessel upon which Samuel Wragg, a member of the South Carolina council, was a passenger. He took from Mr. Wragg all the money he had, about six thousand dollars, and held him for ransom. A little later Black Beard sent four of his men to Charleston and demanded of the governor a chest of medicine, threatening to send Mr. Wragg's head to the governor by breakfast time next day unless the medicine was sent. The chest of medecine was prepared and dispatched to the pirate to save Mr. Wragg's head.

Teach Gives Up His Piracy.—Soon after that exploit Teach, tiring of piracy, sold his stolen goods, disbanded his crew, and went to Edenton and claimed from Governor Eden the royal pardon, which had recently been extended to all pirates who would give up their evil ways. The pardon was granted, and buying a farm near Bath, he settled down and married his thirteenth wife.

Capture of a French Ship.—Black Beard was not satisfied as a land lubber. He, therefore, bought a ship, manned it, and went again to the high seas. Soon he returned having in tow a French ship loaded with sugar and cocoa, claiming that he had found the ship adrift at sea. It was fully believed that he had captured the ship,

but the court of admiralty, sitting at Bath, awarded it to Teach as a lawful prize. It was said that Tobias Knight, the justice who tried the case, was given a part of the cargo as reward for his decision. He was afterwards indicted on a charge of accepting bribes from Black Beard, but acquitted on account of the lack of evidence.

Death of Black Beard.—Throwing off the disguise, Black Beard became again a full fledged pirate. Merchant-men feared to venture upon the sea and commerce was almost entirely cut off. At length, in the fall of 1718, Captain Ellis Brand, commanding the royal fleet in Hampton Roads, Va., sent Lieutenant Maynard with a sloop of war to capture the pirate ship and destroy the crew. Maynard came into the Pamlico sound in the latter part of November and found the pirates near Teach's Hole at Ocracoke. Immediately the two ships became engaged in deadly conflict. Maynard endeavored to run along side of Black Beard, but the latter poured into the former several broadsides, which killed about twenty of Maynard's men. Maynard's ship ran aground and stuck fast. Black Beard came up along side and prepared to take possession, thinking that his enemies were all either dead or wounded. Maynard, however, had ordered his men to conceal themselves in the hold and be ready to strike the pirates as soon as they boarded. Black Beard, followed by about twenty of his men, leaped on board, but were met by Maynard and his heroic crew; and after a fierce hand to hand conflict

Black Beard was slain and all his crew either killed or captured.

Destruction of Piracy.—Black Beard's head was cut off, put upon the bow of Maynard's vessel, and carried first to Bath and afterwards to Virginia as a trophy of victory. The prisoners were tried and hanged. Thus piracy in North Carolina was stamped out.

QUESTIONS AND MAP STUDIES.

1. Point out the Island of Providence; Charleston.
2. Where is Hampton Roads? Ocracoke?
3. Name the most noted pirates ever in North Carolina waters.
4. Where were their headquarters?
5. How was this broken up? Who escaped?
6. Tell how Steed Bonnet was captured and hanged; also how Worley met his death.
7. Describe the appearance of Black Beard.
8. Whom did he capture in the summer of 1718?
9. What was the name of Black Beard's ship?
10. Relate the story of the chest of medicine.
11. Where did Black Beard go for pardon? What did he do?
12. What ship did he afterwards capture?
13. What did he claim? What of Tobias Knight?
14. Who was sent against Black Beard?
15. Give the story of the battle and result.

CHAPTER XIV.

END OF PROPRIATARY RULE.

Change of Governors.—Early in 1722 Governor Eden died, after having served the province for eight years. Although his name became associated with that of Black Beard, during the latter's wicked practices, Governor Eden was popular and greatly loved by the people. His name is perpetuated by having one of the principal towns in the eastern division of the State named for him. Soon after Eden's death the council met and selected as his successor, Colonel Thomas Pollock, who had servde so acceptably during the Indian war. Colonel Pollock lived only a few months after beginning his term, when he too passed from the busy scene of office life and was succeeded by William Reed, who was then president of the council and by virtue of his office became acting governor.

New Precincts Formed.—That year the Assembly removed the political disabilities of Edward Moseley, who had been debarred from practicing law or holding office since 1718. He at once became the favorite of the people, was elected to the Assembly and became speaker, taking his old position as leader of the people, a post he had held for many years. At that time there were two counties in the province, Albemarle and

St. Luk's Parish, established by act of Colonial Assembly, 1753, Salisbury, N. C.

Bath. Albemarle some years before had been divided into the following precincts, which afterwards became counties: Chowan, Perquimans, Pasquotank, Currituck, and Bertie. Bath comprised Beaufort, Hyde, Craven, and Carteret. The Cape Fear country was as yet a wilderness.

Building of Courthouses.—The Assembly of 1722 ordered courthouses to be built at the following places: Chowan precinct, at Edenton; Perquimans, at Phelps' Point; Currituck, on farm of William Peyner; Beaufort and Hyde, Bath; Craven, Newbern; Carteret, Beaufort; Bertie, St. Johns; Pasquotank, at some convenient point to be selected by a committee. These courthouses were small and rude structures, twenty-four feet long and sixteen wide, containing one room only.

George Burrington Appointed Governor.—In 1724 the Lords Proprietors appointed to the governorship George Burrington, a man of ability but quarrelsome. While on a drunken spree in London, during his younger days, he knocked down and otherwise maltreated an old woman, for which he was tried, convicted, and fined. Such a man was now sent over to rule a people that had grown tired of the misrule and neglect of the Lords Proprietors and were in almost open revolt. Almost as soon as the new governor reached the province the breach between the people and the Proprietors became wider. Burrington began his administration by becoming involved in a quarrel with Mr. Reed, president of the council, and some of the members. Without ceremony he removed

from the office of Chief-justice the venerable Christopher Gale and put young Thomas Pollock in his stead. The governor quarreled with most of the leading men of the province and by his indiscreet conduct aroused the people against the government he represented.

Downfall of Burrington.—On account of the murmurs of the people, Burrington complained to the Assembly that he was being insulted and otherwise held in contempt. Three men were arrested on the charge of talking indiscreetly about the governor and arraigned for trial. Burrington was afraid of the evidence that would be brought out in the trial and the publicity that would be given it. To escape the disclosures certain to come, he fled from the province, going first to South Carolina and later to England. Edward Moseley was chosen by the Assembly to succeed Burrington, and served until Sir Richard Everard arrived from England in 1725 with a commission from the Lords Proprietors. Everard was a little old man with a big title, but with very few of the qualifications necessary to rule a turbulent but liberty loving people.

Assembly of 1728.—Two new precincts were formed by the Assembly of 1728. These were Tyrrel and New Hanover. The Cape Fear section had at last been permanently settled about 1722, and now received the name of New Hanover. At the same session, 1728, bills of credit were issued to the value of two hundred thousand dollars, a tax being levied to meet current ex-

penses and commence a sinking fund to pay off the bills when they should fall due.

State Line Run.—During the same year the line between North Carolina and Virginia was run by commissioners appointed by the two provinces. North Carolina sent as her representatives Christopher Gale, Edward Moseley and John Lovick. Edward Moseley and Samuel Swann were the surveyors. These men, together with the commissioners from Virginia, after many toils and hardships in running the line through the Dismal Swamp, never before traversed by white men, completed the work to the satisfaction of both provinces. The line remains now as it was run at that time.

The Proprietors Sell to the Crown.—In 1729 seven of the Lords Proprietors sold their shares to the king and received from him twenty-five thousand pounds each, and some five hundred pounds each for rents still unpaid. Lord Carteret, however, refused to sell his share, and later was granted a considerable portion of the province in the northern part in consideration of his surrendering all share in the government. This was a very satisfactory arrangement, for the people of North Carolina had grown tired of the mischievous and unsteady rule of the Lords Proprietors. At the same time North and South Carolina were made separate provinces by law as they had long been in fact.

Growth and Prosperity.—During the sixteen years since the close of the Indian war the colony

had nearly doubled its population. There were now about ten thousand people living within the present limits of the State besides the savage tribes that still held sway in the forests and plains of the middle section and the mountains of the west. New settlements had been made in Craven, Hyde, Carteret, and Beaufort counties, Settlers were finding their way to the upper reaches of the Neuse and the Trent. On the Cape Fear Colonel Maurice Moore, Cornelius Harnett, and others were building up prosperous communities. North Carolina now ranked with the best of the provinces on the Atlantic coast.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Point out Chowan County, Perquimans, Pasquotank, Currituck, Bertie.
2. Locate the counties of Beaufort, Hyde, Craven, Carteret.
3. Where is Edenton? Bath? Newbern? Beaufort?
4. Where is Tyrrel County? New Hanover?
5. Where is the Dismal Swamp?
6. What two governors died in 1722?
7. What is said of Edward Moseley?
8. Name the counties and precincts in 1722.
9. Where were courthouses built? How large were they?
10. Who became governor in 1724? What kind of a man was he?
11. With whom did he quarrel?

12. Whom did he make chief-justice?
13. Why did Burrington flee from the province?
14. Who succeeded him? Who became governor in 1725?
15. What new precincts were formed in 1728?
16. How much paper money was issued that year?
17. Tell how the State line was run.
18. What happened in 1729? Tell something of the colony's growth.

GENERAL REVIEW OF THE PROPRIETARY PERIOD.

1. Tell important facts about the following persons:

Robert Heath
Lord Maltravers
Francis Yardley
Roger Green
George Durant
William Berkley
William Drummond
John Yeamans
Samuel Stephens
Nathaniel Bacon
John Locke
Peter Carteret
Thomas Eastchurch
Thomas Miller
John Culpeper
Seth Southwell
John Harvey
John Jenkins
Henry Wilkinson
Thomas Pollock
Philip Ludwell
Alex. Lillington
Thomas Harvey
Henderson Walker
Robert Daniel
Edmund Porter
Thomas Carey
John Porter
William Glover
Edward Moseley
John Lawson
Edward Hyde
De Graffenreid
John Barnwell
Louis Mitchell
Tom Blunt
James Moore
Maurice Moore
William Swann
Edward Teach
William Rhett
Samuel Wragg
Charles Eden
Tobias Knight
Lieut. Maynard
George Barrington
John Lovick
Christopher Gale
Samuel Swann

2. Tell where each is; why noted:

Roanoke Island
Old Town Creek
Durant's Neck
Nevis
Barbadoes
Bath
Edenton
Newbern
Fort Barnwell
Nahucke
Cahuncke
Indian Woods
Teach's Hole
Philips Point
St. Johns

3. Tell what took place on each of the following dates: 1629; 1653; 1663; 1711; 1712; 1729.

PERIOD OF EXPANSION AND GROWTH.

1730—1775.

CHAPTER XV.

TEN YEARS OF PROGRESS.

Towns in the Province.—In 1730 there were but four incorporated towns in the province. Bath, the oldest, was given a charter in 1705; Newbern, in 1711; Edenton, in 1716; and Beaufort, about 1720. These were but small villages then, but early became important centers of trade.

Burrington Again Becomes Governor.—Much to the surprise of everybody the king appointed, in 1731, George Burrington as governor. He had been governor six years before and acted so badly that nobody was sorry to see him leave. No one was glad now to see him come back. Many people were disgusted at the way the king was beginning his administration, and openly expressed their disapproval of the appointment of Burrington.

Arrest and Release of John B. Ashe.—John B. Ashe was a member of the governor's council, but was unfriendly to Burrington. He and the governor quarreled and sharp words passed between them. Ashe called Burrington a rogue and a tyrant, and the latter returned the compliment

with a few oaths that shocked the ears of his chief advisers. To stop Ashe's indignant retorts Burrington ordered him thrown into jail. It was the people's time now to take notice. Liberty loving citizens demanded Ashe's release. Burrington steadfastly refused. Chief-Justice Little ordered the prisoner to be brought before him for trial, and upon hearing the evidence, released him. This made Burrington furious, and he removed Little from office by order, but the chief-justice refused to retire.

Burrington's Second Downfall.—Governor Burrington had stirred up another hornet's nest. He had arroused all classes of people against him John B. Ashe, Nathaniel Rice, John Montgomery, Cornelius Harnett, and other leading men united in an appeal to the king that Burrington be recalled, and in their appeal, among other things, they accused the governor of stealing a horse. So great was the feeling against him that Burrington left secretly and returned to England. Nathaniel Rice as president of the council succeeded him as chief executive.

Mission of Dr. Brickell.—About this time Dr. John Brickell with ten white men and two friendly Indians made a journey into western Carolina to establish trade and friendship with the Cherokees of the mountains. There were no roads in those days, and his journey was over pathless forests. He crossed the Blue Ridge and the Great Smokies and descended into what is now Tennessee, exploring a large territory. Upon

his return to Edenton he gave a favorable report of the country he had visited, and thus laid the foundation of future settlements in that section. He afterwards wrote a history of the province in which he related many interesting things he learned on this journey.

Gabriel Johnston.—Early in 1734 the king appointed Gabriel Johnston to the position of governor. Johnston was a Scotchman of good education and came to North Carolina under most favorable circumstances. His aim seemed to have been to benefit the people whom he came to govern. Early in his administration he called the Assembly together and had enacted some very wholesome laws.

New Settlements.—During this period of peace and prosperity new settlements were springing up in many places. Onslow county had been settled some time before the arrival of Governor Johnston, and was fast becoming a prosperous part of the province. Other settlements had been made in what is now Martin, Halifax, and Warren Counties. Edgecombe, Northampton, Bladen, and Cumberland were being opened up to settlers, who were seeking the rich lands of the Roanoke, the Tar, and the Cape Fear Rivers.

Wilmington Settled and Named.—Some years after the beginning of the settlement on the lower Cape Fear at Brunswick, another community was commenced higher up the river and called New Liverpool. Later, the name was changed to Newton, and was so called until 1737 when it was

changed again to Wilmington in honor of Spencer Compton, Earl of Wilmington, who was chiefly instrumental in getting the king to appoint Gabriel Johnston governor.

New Counties.—In 1738 the precincts that had been previously formed were made counties by act of the Assembly. Four others, Bladen, Edgecombe, Onslow, and New Hanover, were formed about the same time, making in all fifteen counties then in the province.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Trace the Blue Ridge Mountains; the Great Smokies.
2. Point out the following counties: Onslow, Martin, Halifax, Warren, Edgecombe, Northampton, Bladen, and Cumberland.
3. Where is Brunswick county? Wilmington?
4. Name the towns in 1730 with date of incorporation.
5. Who was appointed governor in 1731?
6. Tell about the trouble he had with John B. Ashe.
7. What did Burrington try to do to Judge Little?
8. What appeal was made to the king?
9. What became of Burrington?
10. Tell the story of Dr. Brickell's expedition.
11. Who was appointed governor in 1734?

12. What new settlements were made during that period?
13. For whom was Wilmington named?
14. What was done in 1738? How many counties in the province?

CHAPTER XVI.

THE GROWING PROVINCE.

War of Jenkins' Ear.—War broke out in 1741 between England and Spain. It was known as the war of Jenkins' Ear, and came about in a singular manner. Some Spanish sailors captured an English sloop owned by a man named Jenkins, cut off Jenkins' ear, and otherwise maltreated him. Jenkins later escaped, wrapped up his ear, which he had saved, in a napkin, and sent it to the king of England asking for vengeance. England declared war.

North Carolina Aids Georgia.—As soon as it became known that England had declared war, the Spaniards of Florida began to make attacks upon the settlements in Georgia. Governor Oglethorpe of that province applied to North Carolina for aid, and although the conditions were unfavorable, Governor Johnson sent four hundred men to the relief of the southern colony. These North Carolina soldiers helped to drive the Spaniards back and aided in the attack upon St. Augustine, Florida, and afterwards in the unsuccessful siege of Cartagena in South America.

Laws of 1741.—Besides providing means to fight the Spaniards, the Assembly of 1741 passed what is known as personal liberty laws. Among them

were laws respecting the Sabbath, profanity, and drunkenness. The Sunday laws were strict, requiring all persons to apply themselves to the duties of religion, to attend church, and abstain from all work or amusements. The penalty for violating the Sunday law was fourteen shillings. Profane language was punishable by a fine of two shillings and six pence, if by a private citizen, but an officer so offending was fined five shillings for each oath. Any person swearing in the presence of a Court of record was fined ten shillings or confined three hours in the stocks. Drunkenness was punished by a fine of two and a half shillings if the offense was on a week day and double that amount if on Sunday.

Settlement with Lord Granville.—Ever since 1729, when North Carolina became a royal province, there had been some misunderstanding with Lord Granville, heir and successor of Lord Carteret, who, it will be remembered, refused to sell his interest in the province at the time the other Proprietors did. He had surrendered his share in the government but still claimed an interest in the lands of the entire province. In 1743, however, he petitioned the king to allot to him one-eighth of the lands agreeing to give up all other claims. A committee was accordingly appointed to settle with him on that basis and the northern strip of the province, about sixty miles broad, was granted to him. This territory he held and collected rents from until the Revolutionary war.

Forts on the Coast.—French and Spanish privateers, during the period from 1741 to 1760, made frequent attacks upon the peaple living on the coasts of North and South Carolina. To guard against these attacks and to protect the farmers against loss, incident to the inroads of the privateers, the Assembly of 1744 ordered the construction of several forts on the water fronts. One was built near the mouth of the Cape Fear river and named Fort Johnston in compliment to the governor. Others were built at Ocracoke and on Topsail and Bear inlets.

Capture of a Spanish Privateer.—In 1748, before Fort Johnston was fully finished and equipped, a fleet of Spanish privateers entered the Cape Fear river and made depredations upon the people in that section. They did not proceed very far, however, before they discovered that they had gotten into a hostile country; for the settlers gathered together and, with guns, pitchforks, axes, and jackknives made an attack upon the invaders and drove them to their ships. In trying to get away, one of the Spanish ships ran aground and was captured by the pursuing settlers; but only after the crew had escaped to another ship. The victors took from the prize some negro slaves, applied match to her magazine and blew her up. After that the Spaniards steered clear of North Carolina waters.

First Printing Press.—In 1749 James Davis brought from Virginia a printing press and set it up at Newbern. This was the first printing office opened in North Carolina and marks an important

epoch in the history of the State. On this press was printed the first newspaper in 1764, and a collection, in 1752, of the statutes called "Yellow Back".

Scotch Settlers.—During the ten years from 1741 to 1751 large numbers of settlers came into the province and established themselves in various places, building up strong communities and settlements. Many of the Scotch Highlanders, who fled from their homes soon after the collapse of the rebellion of the "forty-five," came to North Carolina and settled on the Cape Fear river in the present counties of Cumberland, Moore, Bladen, and Chatham. Some settlements were made by them also about this time in Robeson and Anson counties. About the same time the Scotch-Irish Presbyterians from Pennsylvania began to come to North Carolina in large numbers. They bought lands in the Piedmont section and established themselves chiefly in the present counties of Alamance, Orange, Guilford, Cabarrus, Mecylenburg, Davidson Montgomery and Rowan. During those ten years the province more than doubled in population and wealth.

Moravian Settlers.—In order to develop his share of the province Earl Granville held out extra inducements to settlers, and attracted many of the Pennsylvania Dutch, who came with their families in large numbers and made homes in some of the finest sections of Piedmont, North Carolina. They were thrifty and intelligent and sowed the seeds of religion and culture that rapidly developed in

that favored section. About 1753 a company of German Moravians arrived from Europe and, under the lead of the pious Bishop Augustus Spangenberg, selected a delightful district in what is now Forsyth county and named it Wachovia for their former home in Germany. Soon a considerable colony of the same thrifty people came from over the seas and planted themselves in "Wachovia," building a community which has developed into the present city of Winston-Salem.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Where is St. Augustine? Cartagena? Ocracoke?
2. Locate the counties of Cumberland, Moore Chatham.
3. Point out the counties of Robeson, Anson Alamance, Orange, Guilford, Cabarrus Mecklenburg, Davidson, Montgomery and Rowan.
4. Where was Wachovia? Locate Forsyth county; Winston-Salem.
5. What was the cause of the war of "Jenkins' Ear?"
6. How did North Carolina aid Georgia?
7. How many men were sent out and what did they do?
8. Name some of the laws that were passed in 1741; some of the penalties.
9. How was the settlement with Lord Granville made?
10. Relate the story of the Spanish privateer.

11. What forts were built on the coast?
12. Who printed the first newspaper? What else was printed?
13. What settlers came into the Piedmont section? Into Forsyth county?
14. What name did the Moravians give their settlement?
15. What kind of people were these new settlers?

CHAPTER XVII.

CALM BEFORE THE STORM.

Death of Gabriel Johnston.—After a successful administration of nearly twenty years Governor Johnston died in 1752, and was succeeded by Nathaniel Rice, president of the council. Although Governor Johnston's administration was altogether in the interest of the king and only incidentally beneficial to the people, his death was deeply regretted throughout the province.

French and Indian War.—President Rice died in 1753, and was succeeded by Mathew Rowan of Bladen County. The next year the French and Indian war broke out. This war was caused by the French, who were in control of Canada and the mouth of the Mississippi river, gradually extending their power toward the east and encroaching upon the Virginia and Pennsylvania settlements. Alarmed by these signs of enterprise and determination on the part of the French, Governor Dinwiddie, of Virginia, began to make preparation to stop these encroachments. He sent young George Washington with a regiment of militia to the western part of Virginia to watch developments there, and despatched a messenger to North Carolina for aid. Governor Rowan soon had a regiment of nine hundred men on the way to Virginia

under the command of Colonel James Innes, of Wilmington.

Failure of the Expedition.—Colonel Innes marched to Winchester, Va., expecting to join other troops at that place and proceed against the enemy. There it was learned that Colonel George Washington had been defeated in western Virginia and that the Virginia House of Burgesses had appropriated no funds for the support of the North Carolina soldiers, and they were compelled to return home. Colonel Innes was taken sick and had to be left at Winchester, where he shortly afterwards died.

Colonel Waddell's Campaigns.—The next year, 1755, Colonel Hugh Waddell was ordered to Virginia with a regiment of volunteers to aid General Braddock in an expedition against Fort Du Quesne. Before he had gone far on the way, however, he was recalled and sent against the Cherokee and Catawba Indians, who were ravaging the remote settlements near the foothills of the mountains. After a brief campaign he succeeded in bringing them to terms of peace. To protect these outlying settlements, forts and block houses were built at different points of exposure. Colonel Waddell also assisted the people of South Carolina in their conflict with the savages, who were laying waste their frontiers. The savages were soon forced to sue for peace.

Tower Hill.—Arthur Dobbs was appointed governor in 1754. He came over from his home in Ireland and bought a farm near the old Indian

fort, Nahucke, in the present county of Greene and named it Tower Hill after a famous place in England. Two or three years later he asked the Assembly to pass a law making Tower Hill the capital of the province, but the proposition was bitterly opposed. In the session of 1758, however, the measure was passed, but was severely denounced as a scheme of the governor's to increase the value of his farm. The minority members of the Assembly appointed Samuel Swann, Mathew Rowan, and Samuel Johnston to lay the matter before the king, who, after reviewing the facts connected with the scheme, revoked the law, and Tower Hill never became the capital.

Restlessness of the People.—Governor Dobbs and the members of the Assembly did not get along very well together, and on account of their cross purposes, not much legislation was enacted. The governor proposed laws, which the Assembly ignored, and the Assembly passed laws which the governor vetoed. Thus nothing was done except to increase the growing dissatisfaction of the people at the blunders of royal rule. In many places the king's tax collectors were roughly handled on account of their activity in carrying out the demands of the British government. Taxes had been made tyrannically high, and the agents of the government had become overbearing in the efforts to collect.

The First Newspaper.—In 1764 James Davis, who had set up the first printing press in North

Carolina, began at Newbern the publication of the first newspaper in the province, "The North Carolina Magazine or Universal Intelligencer". Soon thereafter Andrew Stewart commenced at Wilmington the publication of the "North Carolina Gazette" and the "Weekly Post Boy."

QUESTIONS.

1. Who succeeded Governor Johnston?
2. What was the cause of the French and Indian War?
3. What help was sent to Virginia?
4. Why did the expedition fail?
5. Give an account of Waddell's campaigns.
6. What defenses against the Indians were built?
7. Relate the story of Tower Hill.
8. Why were the people becoming restless?
9. Name the first newspapers.
10. What was the date of publication?

CHAPTER XVIII.

THE STAMP ACT.

Object of the Tax.—At the close of the French and Indian war, England was loaded with debt incurred in carrying on that struggle. North Carolina and other provinces had borrowed money in order to equip their armies and to pay their soldiers during the seven years of its continuance. Now that the war was over it became necessary to provide means for paying off the debt. The English government thought it was right for the colonies to pay a part of it. As the preliminary step to levying a tax a resolution was passed in the British parliment, in 1763, declaring that the king had a right to levy a tax upon the colonies. Two years later parliment passed what is known as the Stamp Act, which required all newspapers, deeds, mortgages, marriage licenses and other legal documents to have upon them, before being issued, a stamp sold only by the government. In that way the British government expected to wring from the colonies many millions of dollars.

Excitement Among the Colonies.—The passage of this act caused intense excitement among the people of North Carolina, as it did also in the other colonies. Throughout America the opinion was freely expressed that England had taken a

fatel step, and that the colonies would surely resist the payment of the tax even to bloodshed and death.

Why the People Resisted.—England claimed that the Americans ought to pay this tax because large sums of money were spent by the government in carrying on war for the protection of the colonies. The colonies, on the other hand, asserted that they, too, had incurred a big debt in consequence of that war, and that the war was not alone for their protection but for the protection of England as well. They claimed also that it was wrong to tax them since they had no representation in the British parliament. "No taxation without representation" became the cry in all the colonies.

"Blood and Death" Resistance.—William Tryon succeeded Arthur Dobbs in 1764. He had been lieutenant-governor for several years and was very popular with the people. He assumed the governorship under very trying circumstances and was much disturbed at the rising temper of the people of the province. After the passage of the Stamp Act, Governor Tryon sent for John Ashe, an active patriot of Wilmington, and asked him how the law would be received in North Carolina. "It will be resisted to blood and death," replied Ashe; and in that answer Governor Tryon saw the spirit of the people, which was otherwise shown in many places in the province by resolutions, patriotic organizations, and ringing petitions to the crown.

Arrival of the Stamps.—In the midst of this ex-

citement, the sloop of war, "Diligence," with stamps on board arrived at Brunswick near Wilmington in November, 1765. Governor Tryon issued his proclamation announcing the arrival of the stamps and summoning everybody to come forward and purchase such as were needed. The proclamation aroused the people still more, and there were unconcealed threats of violence if the "Diligence" should attempt to land the cargo. Colonels John Ashe and Hugh Waddell mustered five hundred men from New Hanover and Brunswick counties and marched at their head to the port of Brunswick and defied the crew of the "Diligence" to attempt a landing. No attempt was made.

In Wilmington, shortly before the arrival of the stamps, a large crowd assembled in the streets to attend what was represented to be the funeral of Liberty. A coffin containing an image of the statue of liberty was carried with drums muffled and bells tolling to the church-yard to be buried. But on reaching the grave the pall-bearers opened the coffin, felt the pulse of the image, and pretended to find that there was still some life. Taking up the coffin they marched back to town, built a great bonfire, before which they placed the image now taken from the coffin, and gave three rousing cheers that liberty was still alive in the province.

Resignation of the Stamp Seller.—About the same time three hundred Sons of Liberty in Wilmington seized William Houston, who had been

appointed stamp agent for the crown, led him to the public square, and there forced him to resign his office and declare that he would never, at any place, sell any of the stamps. No one else in New Hanover or Brunswick could be secured to handle the stamps, and so the stamps remained on board the Diligence in the harbor.

Seizure of the Merchant Vessels.—Soon thereafter two merchant vessels from Philadelphia arrived in port, and as their bills of lading were not stamped, they were seized by the British ship, "Viper," which was in the harbor, although the officers of the captured vessels said the stamps could not be gotten when they left Philadelphia. When that action became known, Colonel Waddel at the head of more than five hundred determined men marched to Brunswick to arrest the collector of the king's revenue at that port and to release the vessels. The soldiers surrounded the governor's home in Brunswick and forced Tryon to surrender the collector, taking from him the clearance papers and bills of lading notwithstanding the threats of the governor. These patriots then attempted to seize the two British ships, but as they were anchored far out in the river the attempt was not successful. The crews, however, stayed close on board. Later, on account of the fact that the British vessels were in desperate need of food and other supplies, Governor Tryon was forced to order the release of the merchant ships in order to conciliate the people so that the supplies might be obtained.

Repeal of the Act.—At Newbern, Edenton, Bath and other places in the province public meetings were held condemning the Stamp Act. All over North Carolina the same feeling of resentment against England was felt. So, after remaining for a month in the port of Brunswick without being allowed to land or to unload its cargo, the Diligence sailed away carrying the hated stamps. Nobody in North Carolina had bought one. In March 1766, the English parliament repealed the Act.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Point out Brunswick on the map.
2. Where is Philadelphia?
3. Why did England attempt to tax the colonies?
4. What resolution was passed in parliament in 1763?
5. What law was passed in 1765?
6. What did the Stamp Act require?
7. How was the passage of the act considered in North Carolina?
8. Why did the colonies resist the Act?
9. What did John Ashe say to Governor Tryon?
10. What ship brought the stamps over?
11. What was the proclamation of the governor?
12. Tell what Ashe and Waddell did.
13. Relate particulars about the funeral of liberty.

14. What did the Sons of Liberty do?
15. Why were two merchant vessels seized?
16. Tell what Hugh Waddell did.
17. Why did Tryon release the vessels?
18. When was the hated law repealed?

CHAPTER XIX.

RISE OF THE REGULATORS.

Governor Tryon's Barbacue.—Soon after the Stamp Act troubles were over, Governor Tryon endeavored to make friends with the people, hoping to bring about a forgiving and a forgetting of the late unpleasantness, and thereby overcome the resistance to the king's authority in North Carolina. Accordingly he gave dinners and entertainments to the public. One day he prepared a sumptuous spread near his home on the Cape Fear and invited all the farmers for miles around to come to the feast. A whole ox was roasted, barbecued pigs of delicious flavor were on the spits, and hundreds of bottles of beer were uncorked. Many people came, but in the midst of the entertainment some of the Governor's enemies threw the ox and pigs into the river and emptied the beer upon the ground.

The Governor's Palace.—Shortly after the Stamp Act troubles, Governor Tryon decided to move the governor's residence from the Cape Fear to the Neuse. He, therefore, asked the Assembly to appropriate money to build, at Newbern, a house which would serve as the executive mansion and the legislative hall. For that purpose the Assembly voted twenty-five thousand

dollars, which Governor Tryon spent in buying a site and laying the foundation. He then asked for more money to complete the building, and an appropriation of fifty thousand dollars was accordingly made. After its completion, the palace was long considered the finest building of the kind in America.

Treaty With the Cherokees.—There was at this time a dispute between the settlers near the Blue Ridge mountains and the Cherokee Indians as to the boundary line between the lands of the settlers and the Indian hunting grounds. Governor Tryon with much pomp and show of finery went with his staff and some soldiers to meet the Indian Chiefs and survey the line. The savages were at first alarmed at the military pomp of the governor, but they soon saw that no harm was intended them. There was no trouble in locating the line and the meeting was mutually agreeable. The Indians were much pleased with Tryon and named him the "Great Wolf of North Carolina," which they intended as a great compliment.

The Regulators.—In 1767, a society called the Regulation sprang up in the counties of Orange, Rowan, Guilford, and Anson. The members were known as Regulators, who bound themselves to one another by an oath that they would defend each other in trouble and resist any attempt to collect from them unjust taxes. They also agreed to quit paying the extortionate fees the king's officers were charging for public work, such as

recording deeds, issuing marriage licenses, and granting charters.

Extortion of Officers.—Two or three years before this time, Thomas Childs and Francis Corbin, agents of Lord Granville, had siezed some of the lands of the settlers on the ground that the deeds were not properly executed. This action of the agents together with the overbearing manners of the rent gatherers and the tax collectors had angered the people, and they determined not to submit to such tyranny. They, therefore, banded together for mutual protection.

Meeting at Sandy Creek.—In the summer of 1767, a large number of Regulators met at Sandy Creek, in what was then Orange county and entered into a solemn covenant with one another to resist the tyranny of these officers, who were conducting the king's government in North Carolina. The two most active leaders among them were Herman Husbands and William Butler. After the meeting at Sandy Creek had adjourned, Husbands and Butler were seized by the king's authority and put in jail at Hillsboro. Soon thereafter, about seven hundred Regulators assembled in the neighborhood of the jail and demanded the release of the prisoners, which was shortly thereafter granted.

Promises of the Governor.—While the Regulators were encamped near Hillsboro, a message was received from Governor Tryon promising to redress their grievances and inviting the Regulators to send a committee to him to make known

The Tyrone Palace, Newbern.

their wishes. James Hunter and Rednap Howell were appointed to wait on the governor, and the Regulators then dispersed. When this committee came into the presence of the governor, at Newbern a little later, without hearing them through, Tryon told them that he would not hear their complaints, but would drive them out of the province unless they immediately advised the Regulators to disband and go to work. This was the first breaking of faith between Tryon and the Regulators.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Point out the Blue Ridge; Orange, Rowan, Anson.
2. Where is Hillsboro? Sandy Creek?
3. Relate the story of Tryon's barbacue.
4. Tell about building the governor's palace.
5. Tell how Tryon got the name of Great Wolf.
6. Relate particulars about the organization of Regulators.
7. Why were Husbands and Butler arrested? Why released?
8. Tell how Tryon broke faith with the Regulators.

CHAPTER XX.

BATTLE OF ALAMANCE.

Gathering of the Militia.—In order to be ready for any trouble that might arise from the activity of the Regulators, Governor Tryon called for the militia of the province to meet him at Salisbury in August, 1768. A large body assembled at the appointed time, and were met by the governor who addressed them in a ringing speech in which he declared that the Regulators were rebels against the king and deserved severe punishment. Tryon then called upon all present to volunteer for the war, and all except one company from Rowan county responded.

Dispersion of the Regulators.—At the head of about sixteen hundred men, Governor Tryon marched from Salisbury to Hillsboro, expecting to meet with the Regulators on the way and to give them battle. But the Regulators, not wishing to be engaged in actual war against the governor, dispersed as he approached and went to their homes. Thinking that the trouble was over and that war had been averted, Tryon disbanded his army and returned to Newbern. Soon afterwards, however, a band of the Regulators went to Hillsboro, marched into the courthouse where court was in session, and by force released the

prisoners that were being tried. Judge Henderson, who was holding the Court, quickly adjourned the sittings and fled in the night from Hillsboro. Some of the most violent of the Regulators dragged Edmund Fanning from the courthouse and beat him. Other lawyers and officers of the court were also badly maltreated.

Wrath of the Governor.—When Governor Tryon heard of what the Regulators had done, he was very angry. He declared that he would drive the last one of them from the province. For that purpose he called upon the counties to furnish their quota of troops and to hold them in readiness to join him at a day's notice. He also requested General Gage, the British commander at Boston, Massachusetts, to send him some ammunition and two cannons. Tryon was personally very popular, and in response to his call eleven hundred men assembled for service. When the field pieces and the ammunition arrived from Boston, the governor was ready to set out against the Regulators.

General Waddell Defeated.—Governor Tryon sent forward with a small force General Hugh Waddell, who had actively opposed the governor in the Stamp Act troubles but who was now a staunch friend, to gather the Anson and Rowan militia and conduct them to the meeting place in Orange County. Waddell was successful in raising about three hundred men and was leading them to join Tryon when he found his way block-

ed by the Regulators in overwhelming numbers and was forced to retreat to Salisbury.

The Black Boys of Cabarrus.—About the same time, spring of 1771, a wagon train loaded with powder and munitions of war for Tryon's army came up from Charleston and was hurrying to Hillsboro. As it was passing through Cabarrus County near where Concord now stands, the train was attacked by a band of young men who had blacked their faces to avoid detection. In the skirmish that ensued the powder was ignited by some of the "black boys" and a tremendous explosion took place, wrecking the entire train, and in the confusion that followed "The Black Boys of Cabarrus" as they were afterwards called escaped. For this offense they were outlawed and pursued by Tryon's vengeance for several months. Some were captured and punished with death while others fled from the province.

Negotiations and Threats.—In April, 1771, Governor Tryon set out from Newbern at the head of his army of eleven hundred men and marched toward Hillsboro. On May 16th he arrived at Alamance Creek in what is now Alamance County, not far from the present town of Burlington. A mile or two off was the army of Regulators, about two thousand strong, drawn up in battle array to oppose him. As soon as the governor's army halted in sight, the Regulators sent a messenger asking for a parley to the end that their grievances might be redressed. Tryon replied that he would redress no grievances; but unless they at once laid

down their arms, returned to their homes, and paid the taxes, he would regard them as enemies of the king. The Regulators sent back a defiant reply and prepared for battle.

The Battle.—As the two armies approached each other, a Regulator by the name of Robert Thompson, who had been held as prisoner in Tryon's camp, tried to escape. As he began to run, Tryon ordered him to stop. Thompson continued to run and was shot down by the governor. Seeing this tragedy, the Regulators began to fire upon Tryon's troops. The governor ordered his men to fire, but they refused to obey. Rising in his stirrups, his face red with anger, Tryon shouted, "Fire! fire upon them or upon me." Obeying at last, the troops poured into the Regulators a raking fire, which was returned with spirit. After a furious cross firing of thirty minutes the Regulators fled to the woods and kept up the fight for two hours from behind trees and rocks. After a time, Tryon ordered a charge into the brush, and the Regulators were put to flight with loss of over one hundred killed and wounded. Tryon's loss was nine killed and sixty-one wounded.

Close of the Trouble.—For two weeks after the battle Tryon's forces hunted the Regulators in the swamps and forests. Six were captured and immediately hanged by order of the governor. Hundreds were driven from the province, and a large number were compelled to take the oath that they would never again take up arms against the king. In this merciless way Governor Tryon stamped

out the embers of opposition to his authority and boasted that he had saved the province to the British crown.

First Blood of the Revolution.—The battle of Alamance was the first armed conflict of the Revolution. The Regulator movement was the first organized resistance to British tyranny in America, and while unsuccessful, it showed the world that North Carolina would not submit to oppression.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Point out Salisbury on the map; Hillsboro; Charleston; Concord.
2. Point out Alamance Creek; Burlington.
3. Where did Governor Tryon muster the militia?
4. How many companies volunteered for the war?
5. What did the Regulators do when Tryon approached?
6. Where did Tryon then go?
7. What did some of the Regulators afterward do at Hillsboro?
8. What did Tryon do when he heard of what was done?
9. What did he get from General Gage?
10. Where did he send General Waddell? What happened to Waddell?
11. Tell the story of the "Black Boys."
12. When did Governor Tryon meet with the Regulators?

13. What request did they make of the governor? Tryon's reply?
14. What happened just before the battle?
15. Give a brief account of the battle.
16. What were the losses on either side?
17. How did Tryon stamp out the trouble?
18. What did the battle of Alamance show?

CHAPTER XXI.

MOVEMENT TOWARDS INDEPENDENCE.

Change of Governors.—In June, 1771, Governor Tryon, in a letter to the Secretary of State in London, announced that he had finished the war with the Regulators and that peace now reigned throughout the province. In the same letter he intimated his desire to be transferred to another field of labor. Soon afterwards he was appointed governor of New York and at once set out for his new post of duty. James Hassell, president of the council, succeeded to the vacancy; but he served only a short time when Josiah Martin arrived from England and assumed control of affairs.

Pardon for the Regulators.—Governor Martin was anxious to reconcile the Regulators and all their sympathizers to the British government. One of the first things he did, therefore, was to issue a proclamation of pardon to all who had been engaged in the late rebellion except Herman Husbands, Rednap Howell, and William Burk, who had offended too deeply for royal forgiveness. Six of the Regulators were still in jail under sentence of death, while many were at liberty and had not taken the oath of allegiance to the king. These prisoner were released and a general pardon granted to all who would come forward and

Gov. Samuel Johnston

take the oath of allegiance. Something over six thousand responded.

Whigs and Tories.—About this time the terms, Whig and Tory, came into use in the province. Those who adhered to the royal government and opposed the movement for independence were called Tories, while those who espoused the patriotic cause were called Whigs. The Whigs were largely in the majority and controlled the Legislature and all the internal affairs of the province. The Tories were despised by their neighbors and looked upon as traitors to their country.

Committee of Correspondence.—When the Legislature met in 1772, it was deemed best to appoint a committee of correspondence to keep in touch with the other colonies, to watch the action of the British Parliament, and to report any legislation of that body that was hostile to the interests of the American people. This committee was composed of John Harvey, Richard Caswell, Samuel Johnston, Joseph Hewes, Edward Vail, Cornelius Harnett, William Hooper, John Ashe, and Robert Howe. The action of the Legislature was severely condemned by Governor Martin, who sought to keep North Carolina from joining the other colonies in their opposition to the king. But he soon saw that he had a stubborn and patriotic people to rule. As a consequence, he and the Legislature were in a quarrel almost his entire four years of office.

Trouble About the Courts.—Early in 1773 the laws regulating courts of justice expired by limita-

tion, and it became necessary to frame others. Accordingly, the Assembly passed a bill providing for a regular system of courts that should have jurisdiction over all crimes committed in the province by anyone whatsoever. This was intended to catch the class of British merchants doing business in the province and who some times dodged the taxes. Governor Martin seeing the purpose of the law and desiring to favor those merchants vetoed the bill. The Legislature then, by resolution, declared that all legislation should be held up unless the governor withdrew his veto. Governor Martin promptly dissolved the Assembly and the members went home angry. For nearly two years governmental affairs were held up, for the governor refused to re-assemble the Legislature. Thus the breach between the people and the king had widened, and the province was hastening towards independence.

Call for a Congress.—As time went on and Governor Martin refused to convene the Assembly, patriotic citizens all over North Carolina began to feel that something should be done for the public safety. Colonel John Harvey, one of the most fearless of patriots, went to see Governor Martin about calling a meeting of the Assembly. He did not see the governor, but he asked the governor's secretary if another session of the Assembly would be called. The secretary replied that Governor Martin would not call another session unless he saw a chance to get a better one than the last. "Then the people will call one," said Colonel Harvey as he left.

After consulting with Willie Jones, of Halifax, Samuel Johnston, of Edenton, and other patriotic leaders, Colonel Harvey issued handbills calling for a convention of delegates to meet in Newbern on the 25th of August, 1774, and inviting representation from all the counties. This was the first real revolutionary step yet taken in North Carolina. Governor Martin was enraged at it, and issued a proclamation denouncing the movement and forbidding obedience to the call. His wrath, however, did the king's cause no good, for the convention met as appointed.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Where is Halifax?
2. What change of governors took place in 1771?
3. What was one of the first things Governor Martin did?
4. Name those who were excepted in the pardon.
5. What is said of the terms Whig and Tory?
6. How did they regard one another?
7. What committee was appointed by the Legislature?
8. Name the members of the committee? What were their duties?
9. How did Governor Martin regard the appointment of this committee?
10. Why did the governor and the Assembly quarrel?
11. Who called a convention of the people? Purpose?
12. What was the action of Governor Martin?

CHAPTER XXII.

END OF ROYAL RULE.

The Provincial Congress of 1774.—August 25th, 1774, the Congress called by John Harvey and others, as mentioned in the preceding chapter, met in Newbern, and organized by electing Harvey, Moderator, or Chairman, and appointed delegates to the continental congress to meet in Philadelphia early in the fall. The delegates were Richard Caswell, William Hooper, and Joseph Hewes. At the same session a resolution was passed declaring that the Navigation Acts of the British Parliament were unjust and oppressive; that no tobacco or spirits turpentine should be exported to England; and that whoever used the East India tea, upon which there was a tax, should be considered an enemy of his country.

The Edenton Tea Party.—Opposition to England's attempt to tax the colonies was not confined to men. The women of the province were as heroic and patriotic as the men. They held their meetings and denounced the action of parliament in no uncertain words. One of these meetings was held in Edenton, October 25, 1774, at the home of Mrs. Elizabeth King, at which there were fifty-one of the most cultured ladies of the town. In a series of resolutions they declared their ad-

herance to the patriot cause, asserting that they would use no more tea nor buy any goods of English make until the tax on tea was repealed. The resolutions were signed by everybody present, and the delicious East India tea was banished from the tables of Edenton families until after the Revolution. This incident is known as the "Edenton Tea Party" although no tea was drunk at the time.

Help is Given to Boston.—On account of the resistance of the people of Massachusetts to the tyranny of England, the parliament of Great Britain passed what is known as the Boston Port Bill, which forbade any ship from coming into of going out from the harbor of Boston. In consequence of that law, the people of Massachusetts were cut off from the outside world and many of them were soon in a starving condition. To relieve the distress, contributions of money and provisions poured into Boston from other provinces. North Carolina sent several ship loads of provisions, which were landed at the nearest port to Boston and hauled to the city in wagons. The cry was heard in every province, "The cause of Boston is the cause of all."

Second Provincial Congress.—In February, 1775 Colonel Harvey called a second meeting of the provincial congress to consider the condition of affairs and to take such steps as seemed to be necessary for the public good. Governor Martin issued a proclamation forbidding the meeting and ordering the representatives not to obey the call,

saying that King George would be exceedingly displeased if the congress met; but the proclamation did not stop anybody, for not many people in North Carolina at that time cared whether the king lost his temper or not. The congress therefore, met, April 3rd, 1775, in Newbern almost in the immediate presence of Governor Martin.

The Legislature and the Congress.—Governor Martin called the Assembly to meet at the same place and time. It happened that most of the members of the Assembly were also members of the Congress. There were sixty-eight members of the Assembly and sixty-one of them were members of the Congress. Colonel Harvey was the presiding officer of both bodies. For a portion of the day the Assembly was in session and the members were addressing Colonel Harvey as "Mr. Speaker." Adjourning as an Assembly, the same body immediately became the Congress and the same members were addressing the same chairman as "Mr. Moderator." The Assembly passed a resolution declaring that the tyranny of the British government ought to be resisted. Thereupon the governor quickly dissolved it, but the same members continued to meet as the Congress in defiance of his commands.

Secret Agents at Work.—Seeing that all hope of maintaining British authority in North Carolina by fair means was gone, Governor Martin sent messengers among the Regulators of Orange County and the Scotch Highlanders of Cumberland to enlist their services against the patriots in the event of war. Secret agents were also dis-

patched to the Cherokees of the mountains, promising them guns and ammunition on condition that they would take up arms against the Whigs. Even negro slaves were approached by these secret agents and persuaded to rise and strike a blow for their freedom and for England. As a result many slaves later left their masters and fled to the British.

Capture of the Governor's Cannon.—To protect himself and council from the patriots. Governor Martin mounted several cannon in front of the palace in Newbern; but while the council was in session Dr. Alexander Gaston and Richard Cogdell, at the head of a number of citizens, made an attack on the palace, April 24, 1775, and carried off the cannon. That night Governor Martin in alarm fled from Newbern and took refuge in Fort Johnston at the mouth of the Cape Fear river. Thus ended forever Royal Rule in North Carolina.

QUESTIONS.

1. What did the first Provincial Congress do?
2. What resolutions were passed?
3. What did the ladies of Edenton do in 1774?
4. Why was the port of Boston closed?
5. How did that effect the people of Boston? How did they get help?
6. What did North Carolina do? What cry was raised?

7. Why did Governor Martin issue a proclamation against the meeting of the Provincial Congress?
8. Why did he dissolve the Legislature?
9. What did the Congress then do?
10. What secret agents did the British have at work?
11. What promise was made to the Cherokees?
12. Who led the attack upon the governor's palace?
13. What was done in the attack?
14. Where did Governor Martin go?
15. What did his flight end?

CHAPTER XXIII.

MECKLENBURG DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

Organization of Committees.—As soon as it became known that Governor Martin had fled from the province and British rule in North Carolina was at an end, many of the counties began to take steps to provide for a system of local self government. County conventions were called and committees of safety appointed to look after the enforcement of the law and to guard the public interest.

Convention at Charlotte.—Colonel Thomas Polk commander of the militia of Macklenburg county early in May, issued a call for a convention of delegates from the various precincts to be held in Charlotte. The Convention met May 19th and organized by electing Abraham Alexander, chairman and John McKnitt Alexander, secretary. In the midst of the deliberation of the convention, a messenger rode hastily into the village and gave the tidings of a battle that had been fought on April 19th, at Lexington, Mass., between the militia of the province and a regiment of British soldiers. The news, although received a month after the battle, created intense excitement and volunteers were eager to march at once to the assis-

tance of Massachusetts. It was evident that the action of British troops in firing upon American citizens meant war, and that the colonies now had no other recourse but to fight for liberty and independence.

Action of the Convention.—Immediately upon the receipt of the startling news, the convention appointed a committee to draw up resolutions expressive of the sentiment of the delegates present upon the situation and the crisis which seemed now at hand. Dr. Ephriam Brevard was chosen chairman of the committee and was selected to write the resolutions. Next morning, May 20th the resolutions were read to the convention and adopted as follows:

1. That whosoever directly or indirectly abets, or in any way, form, or manner, countenance the unchartered and dangerous invasion of our rights, as claimed by Great Britian, is an enemy to this country—to America—and to the inherent and inalienable rights of man.

2. That we do hereby declare ourselves a free and independent people; are, and of right ought to be, a sovereign and self-govering association, under the control of no power other than that of God and the general government of the Congress. To the maintenance of which independence we solmnly pledge each other our mutual co-operation

our lives, our fortunes, and our most sacred honor.

3. That all, each and every military officer in this county is hereby reinstated to his former command and authority, he acting conformably to their regulations. And that every member present of this delegation shall henceforth be a civil officer, viz.: a justice of the peace, in the character of a committee-man, to issue process, hear and determine all matters of controversy, according to said adopted laws, and to preserve the peace, union, and harmony, in said county, to use every exertion to spread the love of country and fire of freedom throughout America, until a more general and organized government be established in this province.

The Signers.—These resolutions were signed by the chairman, secretary, and twenty-five members of the convention. Some men, who had been Regulators, refused to sign on the ground that such action would be violating the oath which they took under Governor Tryon four years before. With these exceptions the resolutions were unanimously endorsed. This was the first declaration of independence adopted in America, and was more than a year before the declaration at Philadelphia, July 4, 1776. It showed that North Carolina was leading the other colonies in the movement for independence.

Mission of Captain Jack.—Three or four days later a copy of the resolutions was sent to the Continental Congress then in session in Philadelphia. Captain James Jack was the special messenger selected for this important duty. Reaching his destination Captain Jack gave the copy into the hands of the North Carolina delegation to be presented to the Congress. For the reason however, that the resolutions were thought to be premature, they were never brought to the attention of Congress, and most of the members were ignorant of the fact that a copy had been sent to Philadelphia. Captain Jack returned to Charlotte but later moved to Georgia, where he died in 1805.

Later Resolutions.—Eleven days after the passage of the first set of resolutions, May 31st, the convention again met in Charlotte to complete the work begun on the 20th. In a series of twenty resolutions an independent government for Mecklenburg County was set up under the authority of the Continental Congress and the province of North Carolina. Thus these farmers of Mecklenburg met and spoke on May 20th the words that were heard around the world, and on the 31st organized a government for their protection and comfort, proclaiming to the world that they had thrown off the galling yoke of England and were henceforth an independent people. This was the first declaration of independence ever proclaimed in America.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Point out Mecklenburg County; Charlotte; Lexington; Philadelphia.
2. Upon the flight of Governor Martin what was done in many counties?
3. What was the business of the committee of safety?
4. Who called the convention at Charlotte? Name the chairman and secretary.
5. What news was received on May 19th?
6. What affect had the news upon the people of Charlotte?
7. What did the convention do?
8. Who wrote the resolutions?
9. Give in your own words the first resolution; the second; the third.
10. How many members signed the resolutions?
11. Who refused to sign and why?
12. What is remarkable about the Declaration?
13. Who carried a copy to Philadelphia? Why were the resolutions not brought to the attention of Congress?
14. What did the convention do on May 31st?
15. Why are the Mecklenburg resolutions important?

The following are the signers of the famous resolutions: Abraham Alexander, chairman; John McKnitt Alexander, secretary; Ephriam Brevard Hezekiah J. Balch, John Phifer, James Harris William Kennon, John Ford, Richard Barry,

Henry Downe, Ezra Alexander, William Graham, John Queary, Hezekiah Alexander, Adam Alexander, Charles Alexander, Zacheus Wilson, Waightstill Avery, Benjamin Patton, Mathew McClure, Neil Morrison, Robert Irvin, John Flennegin, David Reese, John Davidson, Richard Harris, and Thomas Polk, Sr.

CHAPTER XXIV.

THE PROVINCE BECOMES A STATE.

The Cumberland Resolutions.—June 19th, 1775, the patriots of Cumberland County met in convention and by resolution pledged themselves to respond at a moment's notice, whenever called upon by the Provincial Congress, to take up arms against the British government. They further declared any person refusing to sign the resolution a public enemy. Nearly all the Scotch Highlanders refused to sign, and were therefore classed by the patriots of the county as traitors to their country.

The Scotch Leaders.—About this time three well known Scotch soldiers came into North Carolina from the British army in Boston. They were Donald and Alan McDonald and Donald McLeod, who had been sent to Cumberland to stir up the Highlanders against the patriots. They brought word that early in the following year a British army was coming into North Carolina to reduce the Whigs to submission. These men began to organize the clans and to train them for war against the patriots.

Capture of Fort Johnston.—Fort Johnston, at the mouth of the Cape Fear, was in possession of Governor Martin and a detachment of British

troops. In July, 1775, Colonel James Moore was ordered to storm the fort and, if possible, seize the governor. With the first continental regiment Moore proceeded to carry out his orders, and was joined by Colonel John Ashe with the New Hanover and the Brunswick militia. Arriving near the fort they demanded the surrender of the garrison. Governor Martin and the troops he had in the fort escaped to the British sloop-of-war, the "Cruiser," that was anchored near, and left the fort to the victorious patriots, who burned all the wood work, destroyed the British quarters, and retreated.

Provincial Congress at Hillsboro.—In August 1775, the third Provincial Congress met at Hillsboro. Since the meeting of the second Congress at Newbern, Colonel John Harvey, the patriotic and able president, had died. Another distinguished leader, Samuel Johnston, was chosen to succeed him. This Congress did some very important things. It appointed a committee to work among the Regulators and induce them to enlist in the patriot cause. At the same time a provincial government was established by appointing a council of two members from each judicial district and one from the province at large. Samuel Johnston was elected as one of the councillors, but he did not attend the first meeting at Smithfield. Cornelius Harnett, of Wilmington, was chosen president of the council, and by virtue of that office, governor of the new State. Thus North Carolina took another step toward independence.

The Regulators.—On account of the oath of allegiance which Tryon had forced upon the Regulators five years before, most of them refused to join in the movement for independence. They regarded the oath taken at that time still binding and would take no part in the meetings now being held in the interest of the freedom of the colonies. Later, a large number of them joined the American armies, but by far the greater number became Tories.

The Minute Men.—The Hillsboro congress divided the State into five military districts, and authorized the enrollment of five hundred men in each district with instructions to be ready to march at a minute's notice. They were, therefore, called minute men. Five Colonels were chosen for the districts: Edward Vail for the Edenton division; Richard Caswell, for Newbern; Alexander Lillington, for Wilmington; Thomas Wade, for Salisbury; and Nicholas Long, for Halifax. A short time afterward other districts were formed with Griffith Rutherford, Thomas Polk, and James Martin as colonels.

British Agents Among the Slaves.—In September, 1775, Governor Martin on board the British gunboat, Cruiser, at the mouth of the Cape Fear issued a proclamation calling upon negro slaves to rise against their masters and strike a blow for their own freedom. Secret agents were also at work inciting them to acts of violence and persuading them to abandon their homes and enlist in the British army. Such acts by the royal gov-

ernor served only to arouse the patriots and make them more determined than ever to throw off the galling yoke of England.

Howe's Expedition to Virginia.—Early in December Colonel Robert Howe, at the head of the second North Carolina Continental regiment marched into Virginia to aid the patriots there in expelling the royal governor, Dunmore, from the province. In a short but brilliant campaign the British government in the Old Dominion was overthrown, and Colonel Howe returned to North Carolina, where he was soon afterward rewarded by being raised to the rank of brigadier-general. About the same time Colonel James Moore was promoted to the same rank.

The Scovilites Defeated.—Late in the year, 1775, in the north-western part of South Carolina certain Tories called Scovilites began to assemble and threaten trouble. As soon as the news of such hostile meetings became known, Colonels Rutherford, Polk, and Martin collected about nine hundred of the minute men of Western North Carolina and marched against them. Being joined by the South Carolina troops the two forces attacked the Scovilites and defeated them with great slaughter, killing and capturing more than four hundred. By that prompt and decisive act the royal cause in South Carolina was crushed for the time.

QUESTIONS.

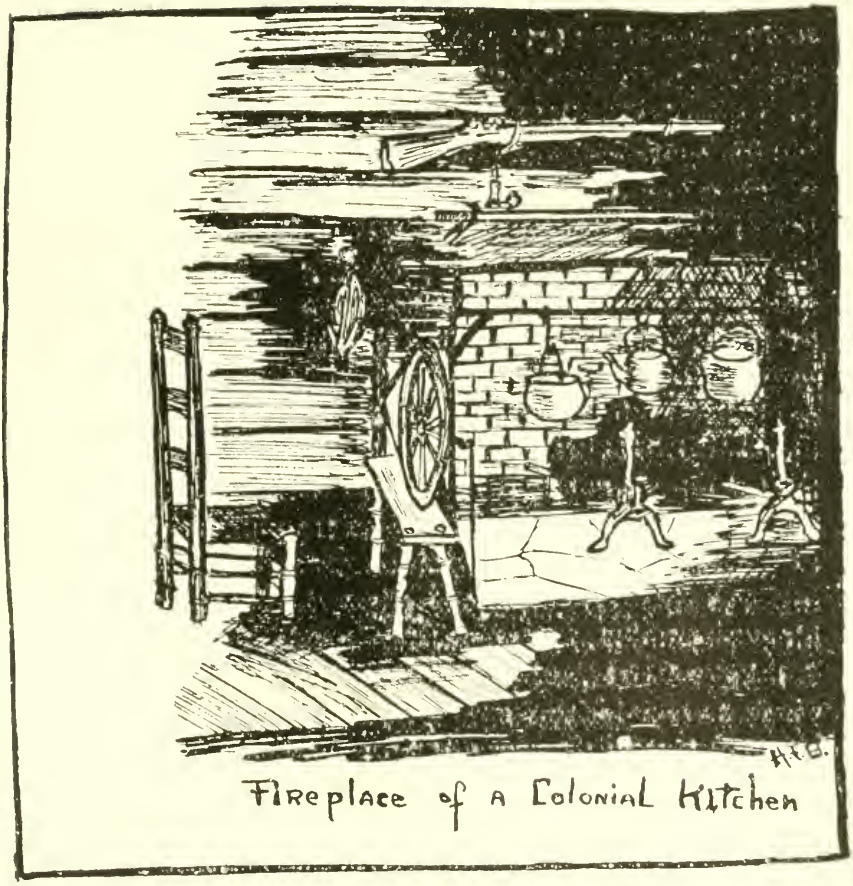
1. What were the Cumberland resolutions? Who refused to sign them?
2. What did the Highland Scotch do? What three leaders came into the State? What news did they bring?
3. When and how was Fort Johnston captured? What was done with it?
4. What did the Hillsboro Congress do?
5. Tell how North Carolina became a State?
6. Why did the Regulators refuse to join the patriots? How did they act later?
7. Name the districts and the colonels. How many men from each district?
8. Who were the minute-men?
9. Tell about British agents among the slaves; Howe's campaign.
10. Give details of the campaign against the Scovilites.

CHAPTER XXV.

LIFE IN THE COLONY.

Classes of People.—Before narrating the more stirring events of the Revolution, it will be interesting to take a glance at social conditions existing in North Carolina during colonial times. From the earliest period there were several classes of people in the province. First, were the large landowners, called planters, who lived in almost luxury upon their plantations. Next, came the small landowners, who, in method and style, differed very little from the former. The two acted together upon nearly all public questions. There were also a distinct class of men called "overseers," who were employed by the large planters to superintend the work on the plantations and to control the slaves. Another class were the descendants of men who had been sold into slavery for crime and brought to the colony to serve out the period of their enslavement. These last were usually ignorant and indolent, but were not numerous. Negro slaves constituted a very large class, as negro labor on the large plantations was found to be profitable.

Social Life in the Colony.—As the homes of the large planters were a considerable distance apart there was little visiting among members of that



Fireplace of a Colonial Kitchen

class. Occasionally, however, house parties were given and guests for miles around gathered to spend a few days in dancing or other social amusements. Among the small landowners there was more freedom of intercourse, and visiting was more frequent. The descendants of the indented slaves, though white, were entirely separated socially from the other two classes and were not received in good society. There were no frequent meeting places. Once a month church services brought the people together. There all classes met, and, while waiting for the traveling parson, conversation became brisk and the news of the day was discussed. As towns were few and newspapers fewer the "meeting house" was the popular resort not only for hearing the gospel preached but also for learning the happenings in the community. On public occasions such as court week or election day, men gathered in crowds and discussed topics of agricultural and political interest. It was a time also for horse-swapping.

Customs and Dress.—The habits and customs of people of that day were very different from those of the present. Among the wealthy and well-to-do class education was extensive, but among the poorer classes the densest ignorance prevailed. These were the days of the "simple life." The plainest manner of living was the fashion. Even among the wealthy, plain food and dress was the rule. Hospitality to the stranger or traveler was one of the cardinal virtues of the times. The

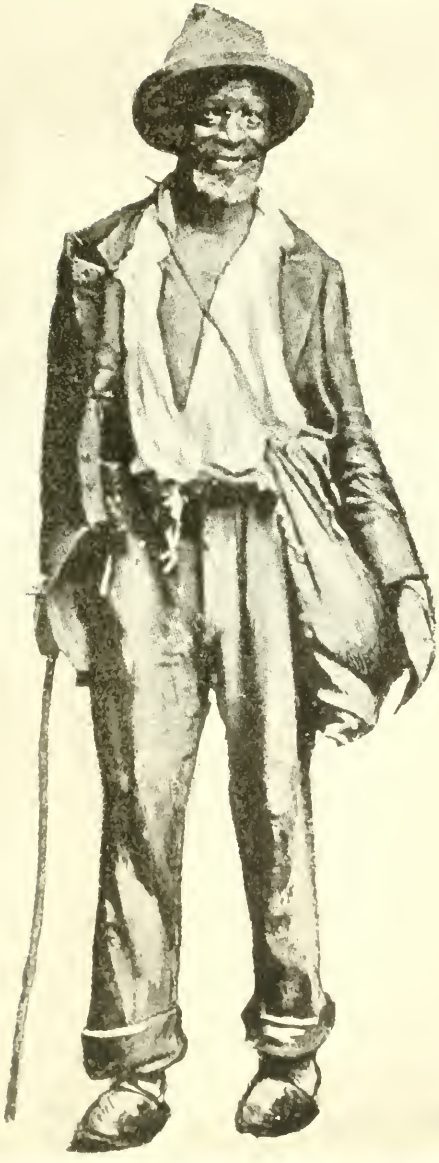
latch-string always hung on the outside. It was considered a grievous sin if anyone refused to give food and shelter to a way-farer. Colonel Edward Buncombe, of Tyrrel County, had in large letters over the entrance to his grounds the famous words:

"WELCOME ALL TO BUNCOMBE HALL."

The sentiment thus oddly expressed was general. Not only Colonel Buncombe but every one extended a hearty welcome to all visitors or travelers.

The dress of the men of that day was characteristic. Square cut coats with long-flapped waistcoats, knee pants, and stockings reaching high above the knees, large hanging cuffs and lace ruffles, square toed, short-quartered shoes with high red heels and small buckles, small three-cornered hats, and sword at the side completed the dress of the gentleman of that period. The costume of a lady was striking also. The hair was worn clustering in curls round the back of the neck and shoulders. An enormous hoop held the dress extended. The skirt was flounced and furbelowed in a most striking manner. Cherry colored hoods and scarlet stockings were worn. A black silk mantua and a small muff completed the attire.

The Great House.—The master's dwelling on a large plantation was known as the "great house," not because it was very large but because it was larger than other houses on the place. It was usually a frame building, two stories high, with



Anti-Bellum Negro.

four rooms, and a chimney at each end. Some of these great houses were built of brick with many large rooms, broad halls, and wide fire-places.

The Kitchen.—The kitchen was usually about 30 yards from the "great house" and built of logs. It had a fire-place about twelve feet wide in one end of the room in which hung the pot hooks. The cooking utensils were pots, gridirons, kettles, frying pans, sauce pans, waffle irons, and baking spiders. Each article of food was cooked in a separate vessel over a bank of coals. The cook was queen of the kitchen, and was much respected, especially by the children of the plantation, both white and black.

Negro Quarters.—Negro cabins were generally built of pine logs, the cracks being chinked with mud. The chimneys were built of sticks and mud and the floors of slabs. These rudely constructed houses, on a large plantation, were put up in rows with a street between, which with the great house near by gave the appearance of a little city. The slaves were comfortable in these cabins and spent the evenings in conversation, singing, and dancing. Sometimes a certain cabin became famous because of the marvelous tales some "Uncle Remus" was accustomed to tell. Such a cabin became the resort of the children from the great house, and many an evening was spent by the boys and girls sitting in the laps of "Uncle" and "Auntie" and listening to their wonderful tales. Perhaps, the most famous person in the negro quarters was the

"black mammy," a person in the estimation of the children not much below father and mother.

Hunting and Fishing.—In a country so sparsely settled as North Carolina was in the early part of the eighteenth century, there could be very few sports. Hunting was one of the most enjoyable recreations. Each planter owned a "pack" of hounds, and on certain days the fox chase was the absorbing occupation for both men and women. Also deer and wild turkeys were abundant. Fish were plentiful in the sounds, rivers, and creeks, and fishing was, therefore, both profitable and pleasant.

Permanence of Plantation Life.—The Revolution did not overthrow these colonial customs, but they continued with little change until the Civil War of 1861-65, when the breaking up of classes took place, bringing about a new condition and a new regime.

QUESTIONS.

1. Name the classes of people in the colony.
2. Why was there little visiting among the planters?
3. Which class was separated socially from the others?
4. How was news distributed? What was done on public occasions?
5. What was the state of education?
6. What was the manner of living? What of hospitality
7. What is said of Buncombe Hall?

8. Describe the dress of a gentleman of that time; a lady.
9. Describe the "Great House;" the kitchen and utensils.
10. How was the food cooked? How was the cook regarded?
11. Describe the negro quarters.
12. How did the slaves spend their evenings?
13. Who was the "black mammy?" How was she regarded?
14. What is said of hunting? Fishing?
15. How long did colonial customs continue?

GENERAL REVIEW OF THE PERIOD OF EXPANSION AND GROWTH.
1730—1775.

STUDY OF PERSONS.

Answer to each of the following: Who was he? What did he do?

Nathaniel Rice
Gabriel Johnston
James Davis
John B. Ashe
John Brickell
Spencer Compton
Mathew Rowan
Arthur Dobbs
Hugh Waddell
Samuel Johnston
Samuel Swann
William Tryon
John Ashe
Rednap Howell
Herman Husbands
James Hassell
James Hunter
John Harvey
Josiah Martin
Richard Caswell
Willie Jones
Joseph Hewes
William Hooper
Thomas Polk
Alexander Gaston
Ephraim Brevard
Abraham Alexander
Donald McDonald
James Jack
James Moore
Donald McLeod
Cornelius Harnett
Robert Howe
Edward Vail
Alexanedr Lillington
James Innes

STUDY OF PLACES.

Give location of each of the following places and tell what was done there:

Newton	Ocracoke
Topsail	Wachovia
Tower Hill	Brunswick
Sandy Creek	Hillsboro
Salisbury	Alamance Creek
Charlotte	Fort Johnston

IMPORTANT EVENTS.

Give the principal incidents of the following events:

1. Stamp Act trouble.
2. Battle of Alamance.
3. Flight of the Royal Governor.
4. Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence

INDEPENDENCE AND NATIONALITY.

1775—1789.

CHAPTER XXVI.

BATTLE OF MOORE'S CREEK BRIDGE.

British Invasion Threatened.—On board the British gunboat, Cruiser, at the mouth of the Cape Fear River, Governor Martin received the news of the Mecklenburg Declaration with unfeigned anger. He wrote to the English secretary of State in London as follows: "The resolves of the committee of Mecklenburg, which your lordship will find in the enclosed newspaper, surpasses all the horrid and treasonable publications that the inflammatory spirits of the continent have yet produced. The copy of the resolves were sent off, I am informed, by express to the Congress at Philadelphia as soon as they were passed in the Committee."

In order to check the spirit of liberty which seemed so general in North Carolina, Governor Martin sent a messenger to General Gage in Boston, asking him to send a British army to the Cape Fear, promising to have ten thousand Tories in arms to assist in the conquest of the province. General Gage, the Commander-in chief of the Brit-

ish forces in America, promised to send General Clinton with a powerful army early in the following year.

Clinton Sends Word.—About the first of January, 1776, word came (to the Highlanders on the Cape Fear) that General Clinton was coming to attack Wilmington about the last of February and was expecting a large number of the king's friends to meet him there. His plan was to seize Wilmington, use it as a base of operations, and from that point send out his forces to overrun the State.

Gathering of the Highlanders.—As soon as the message from Clinton was received, General Donald McDonald raised the royal standard at Cross Creek and invited all who wished to uphold British rule in North Carolina to join him. At once the Scottish pibrochs began to sound and the clans to assemble. "King George and broadswords" was the rallying cry, and soon two thousand men had been enrolled. About five hundred Regulators also flocked to the king's standard.

Flora McDonald.—At that time there lived at Cross Creek, Cumberland County, a very celebrated woman named Flora McDonald. She was the wife of Alan McDonald, one of the Scottish leaders, and had come with her husband to North Carolina in 1774. In Scotland, her native land she had once saved the life of Prince Charles pretender to the English throne, after the disastrous battle of Culloden, and had become famous. After coming to North Carolina she and her hus-

band took the side of the king against the colonies and became staunch Tories. They were active at this time in rallying the Highlanders and in organizing them for war.

The Whig Forces Assemble.—To meet this invasion under Clinton from without and to check the Tories from within, the patriots had only a small force under arms. General James Moore with the first North Carolina continental regiment was near Brunswick and was endeavoring to keep his forces between the British fleet and the Tories. Colonel Alexander Lillington, with about one hundred minute-men, was in Wilmington. Colonel Kenan, with the Duplin county militia, was near at hand. The militia of other counties was being collected for any emergency.

General Moore at Rockfish.—When it became known that the Tories were assembled at Cross Creek and getting ready to begin their march to the coast, General Moore and Colonel Lillington hastened up from Wilmington and posted themselves at Rockfish in Cumberland county on the road from Cross Creek to Wilmington. Here they were reinforced by Colonel Kenan with two hundred men and Captain John Ashe with one hundred. Other forces were hurrying to their assistance also. Colonel James Martin was coming from Guilford county; Colonel James Thackston was leading a small force from Anson and Robison Counties; and Colonel Richard Caswell, with eight hundred men, was hurrying from Newbern.

Caswell at Moore's Creek.—Caswell came up and occupied Moore's Creek bridge, which was on the direct road from Cross Creek to Wilmington about fourteen miles from the latter place. There he fortified his position on the right bank of the creek opposite to the one the Tories were on. General Moore, finding out that the Tories were marching past him at Rockfish toward Wilmington, sent Colonel Lillington and Captain Ashe with two hundred and fifty men to the assistance of Colonel Caswell at Moore's Creek. With an effective force, therefore, of about one thousand men Caswell awaited the coming of the Tories on their way to join Clinton at Wilmington.

Attack and Defeat of the Tories.—Reaching Moore's Creek on the evening of February 26th the Tories found the bridge torn up and the patriots strongly posted in the other side. General Donald McDonald was ill and Colonel Duncan McLeod, the next in command, waited until next day to attempt a crossing. Early on the morning of February 27th the bagpipes began to sound and the Scotish battle cry to be heard. McLeod at the head of a chosen body of men marched up in front of Caswell and demanded the surrender of the Whigs. Colonel Caswell replied that he came there to fight, not to surrender. McLeod shouted to his men to follow him as he began to cross the creek on the girders. He was followed by Colonel Campbell and others. The patriots opened fire upon the Tories. McLeod fell pierced by twenty-six bullets. Campbell and others were

killed before they had crossed. Others attempted to follow but shared the same fate. Then others still, but the steady and unerring fire of Caswell's men beat them back. Seeing the Tories hesitate Caswell ordered a charge across the creek and made an attack upon the entire line. The Tories were unable to withstand the charge and fled from the field.

Capture of the Tory Camp.—Caswell pursued the fleeing enemy eight miles and captured their camp with eight hundred men. Both Donald and Alan McDonald were among the prisoners. The spoils of the camp were considerable. There fell into the hands of the Whigs, besides the prisoners thirteen wagons and teams, eighteen hundred stands of arms, one hundred and fifty swords, and seventy-five thousand dollars in gold. This sweeping victory was accomplished with a loss to the patriots of only one man killed and two wounded. This was a death blow to the king's cause in North Carolina. The Tories that escaped death or capture fled in every direction, finally finding their way home where they remained peaceful during the remainder of the war. This was the first victory for the patriot cause in the Revolutionary war.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Locate Cross Creek; Fayetteville.
2. Point out Moore's Creek; Rockfish.
3. What did Governor Martin determine to do? Whom did he ask for aid?
4. What did he promise General Gage? What message did Clinton send?
5. What was Clinton's plan?
6. Where did the Highlanders gather? What was the rallying cry?
7. How many Tories assembled? Tell the story of Flora McDonald.
8. What forces did the patriots have? Tell about Moore's movements.
9. What other forces were coming to his assistance?
10. Where did Caswell post himself? How many men were with him?
11. Where were the Tories going? Who commanded them?
12. Give the full story of the battle. What booty was captured?

CHAPTER XXVII.

THE YEAR OF INDEPENDENCE.

Eager for Liberty.—After the battle of Moore's Creek Bridge, it was seen that reconciliation with England was out of the question. Those who had clung to the hope of a peaceful settlement of the difficulties were now forced to cast their fortune either for or against the independence of the colonies. The sentiment in North Carolina for National Independence had been growing ever since the Mecklenburg Declaration and was now at fever heat. In other colonies also the desire for freedom was becoming irresistible.

The Halifax Congress.—The Provincial congress met at Halifax, April 4, 1776. Soon after assembling it was seen that the sentiment for independence was universal. The only difference of opinion was as to the best way to go about it. After a few days of debate the question was referred to a committee, of which Cornelius Harnett was chairman.

The Resolution Passed.—April 12th the committee made the report, which contained the following resolution:

"**Resolved,** that the delegates of this colony in the continental congress be empowered to concur

with the delegates of the other colonies in declaring independence, and forming foreign alliances reserving to the colony the sole and exclusive right of forming a constitution and laws for this colony and of appointing delegates from time to time to meet the delegates of the other colonies for such purposes as may be hereafter pointed out."

The resolution was unanimously adopted. It marked an epoch in the history of the State, being the first expression for national independence that had been made in all America.

Clinton on the Cape Fear.—As he had promised Sir Henry Clinton with thirty-six vessels of war and an army of invasion came into the Cape Fear about the last of February. When he approached Wilmington, however, he found General James Moore with a well disciplined force ready to resist him, for Moore had hurried from Rockfish when he heard of the approach of the British.

A British Proclamation.—May 5th, 1776, General Clinton, on board his flag-ship, issued a proclamation declaring that a wicked rebellion existed in North Carolina and calling upon all friends of the king to assist in putting it down. He also offered pardon to all who were in arms if they would at once lay down their arms. Robert Howe and Cornelius Harnett were excluded by name, as they had offended his majesty too deeply for pardon. The proclamation was barren of results as no friends of the king joined the British

standard. Clinton, in his rage, therefore, sent a small force into Brunswick County and wantonly burned the residence of General Howe and sailed away to Charleston, South Carolina. There he met with armed resistance from the South Carolina troops, assisted by two North Carolina companies, in his attack on Fort Moultrie, and, after a hotly contested battle on June 28th, was forced to withdraw.

Indian Uprising in the West.—John Stuart, a British agent among the Indians, had been working among the Cherokees for a long time, trying to persuade them to take up arms against the patriots. At last in the summer of 1776, he succeeded in getting them to fall upon the settlements beyond the Great Smoky mountains in what is now Tennessee, and before they could be checked two hundred of the settlers had been slain. To reduce these savages to submission General Rutherford was sent out in July, the same year. With an army of two thousand men Retherford crossed the Blue Ridge at the Swannanoa gap, fought the Indians near where Franklin now stands, and like a whirl-wind, descended into the valley of the Tennessee, during the savages before him and burning their towns and crops. He was assisted in this campaign by Colonel Williamson with a South Carolina force that had also been sent against the Indians. In a short time the savages were suing for peace.

Independence Proclaimed.—Late in July it became known in North Carolina that the Continen-

tal Congress at Philadelphia had passed a national Declaration of Independence on July 4th. The news was received with rejoicing everywhere and the resolutions as passed were read at every court-house door in the colony. At Halifax, August 1st the reading of the Declaration was made a great patriotic event. A great crowd of people assembled and Cornelius Harnett read the resolutions to the cheering multitude.

First Governor Elected.—In November, 1776 the first State Convention met at Halifax, adopted a constitution on the 18th and immediately organized a State government. The convention selected Richard Caswell, the hero of Moore's Creek Bridge, as the first governor under the new constitution. He at once took the oath of office and began the direction of affairs at this critical time. North Carolina was one of the first States to organize a regular government.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Point out the Great Smoky Mountains.
2. Trace the course of the Blue Ridge Mountains.
3. Where is Franklin? the Tennessee river?
4. What was the feeling in the colony about independence after the battle of Moore's Creek Bridge?
5. What did the Provincial Congress at Halifax do?
6. What lead did North Carolina thus take?

7. What did General Clinton find on the Cape Fear?
8. Tell about the proclamation that was issued?
9. What two men were excluded from the pardon?
10. Give an account of the attack upon Charleston.
11. What were the Indians in the west doing?
12. Tell what General Rutherford did.
13. Give an account of the reading of the Declaration at Halifax.
14. Give an account of the Halifax convention.
15. Who was the first governor under the new constitution?

CHAPTER XXVIII.

PARTISAN WARFARE IN THE NORTH-WEST.

Conflicting Interests.—In many counties in the State there was a considerable number of Tories. They were very active in trying to uphold the authority of King George, but the Whigs were more active in trying to overthrow it. In consequence of these conflicting interests, therefore, an almost ceaseless warfare raged in many neigh-

Vigilance Committees.—Vigilance committees were appointed in every county where there were Tories. These committees were to keep watch upon all persons suspected of being friendly to the king's cause. They had power to arrest such suspected persons, bring them before the committees of safety, and force them to either swear allegiance to the State and the Continental Congress or to leave the county. It often happened that those who refused to take the oath were treated with a coat of tar and feathers and made to ride a rail out of the neighborhood. By such means the patriots in most counties were able to keep the Tory influence in subjection.

In the Forks of the Yadkin.—In the Forks of the Yadkin River, then a part of Rowan County, the Whigs and Tories were nearly equal in num-

ber. Conflicts were almost of daily occurrence. A military company had been in existence there for a long time with Samuel Bryan as captain and Richmond Pearson as lieutenant, Bryan being a Tory and Pearson a Whig. The Whig members of the company wished to volunteer for the service of the State, but the Tory members opposed it. There was, therefore, considerable strife in the meetings. Captain Bryan urged the company to declare for the king, but Lieutenant Pearson violently objected to it, and the two men, on one occasion on the drill ground almost came to blows. Bryan ordered Pearson under arrest, but the Whig members of the company resisted the order. Finally, it was agreed that at an appointed time and place Bryan and Pearson should settle the matter by a fair fist fight, and whoever was victorious in the fight, to him the company should yield obedience. Pearson was winner and the company was saved to the State, while Bryan went farther up the river, organized another company, and later joined the British in South Carolina.

This incident shows how slightly people, in some neighborhoods, were held to the cause of the colonies, or what events some times turned the tide either to the one side or the other.

The Northwestern Counties.—In what are now Stokes, Surry, Wilkes, and Watauga Counties a most cruel partisian warfare raged in the early part of 1776. The Tories were numerous and seemed determined to force those counties to re-

main faithful to England, while the Whigs, led by Colonels Cleveland, Winston, Lenoir, Martin and Williams, were equally bold in their determination to put down the Tory influence. The conflict was long and bitter, resulting finally in the expulsion of the greater part of the Tories, who fled to the Indians of the Great Smoky Mountains, or to the British in South Carolina.

Colonel Benjamin Cleveland.—The hero and warhorse of all these partisan conflicts was Colonel Benjamin Cleveland, who lived in Wilkes County. Colonel Cleveland was a fearless and uncompromising patriot. He hated the very name of Tory and could not bear the sight of one. During the partisan warfare that raged incessantly for more than a year in that part of the State, he met the Tories in many conflicts and rarely ever allowed one of them to escape. Whenever a Tory was captured and brought before him he either had a hanging or a whipping.

Cleveland Captured by the Tories.—On one occasion, Cleveland being separated from his command, was captured by the Tories and taken into the woods near Riddle Knob, Watauga County, and ordered on pain of instant death to write passes for certain Tories through his lines. Cleveland was a poor penman, but a good thinker. With a log for a writing desk he pretended to be writing the passes, but he was killing as much time as possible. He fumbled with his pen a good while anxiously hoping that some of his men would come upon the scene, and he was not

disappointed in this. Before he had finished writing the passes, Captain Robert Cleveland, his brother, at the head of a body of patriots, came dashing upon them. Colonel Cleveland dodged behind the log, upon which he had been writing, to escape the bullets which began to fly. After a short conflict the Tories were beaten and fled in terror. Some weeks afterwards Cleveland captured the same band, and forthwith had their leader hanged.

No Tories in Bute.—While many counties of the State were oppressed and overrun by the Tories there were some sections practically free from their presence. "There are no Tories in Bute" was a saying well known at the time. Bute county was afterward divided into Franklin and Warren, and those counties have the worthy distinction of having had no Tories during the Revolution. None were allowed to live in the Rocky River settlement in Cabarrus County. Very few were found in the extreme eastern counties but large numbers lived in the Piedmont and mountain sections.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Trace the Yadkin river.
2. Point out Stokes County; Surry; Wilkes; Watauga; Franklin; Warren; Cabarrus.
3. What did the Tories try to do in many counties?

4. For what were viligance committees appointed? How were Tories treated?
5. Give story of the conflict between Bryan and Pearson.
6. What did Bryan do after his defeat?
7. What was going on in the northwestern counties? What result?
8. Relate the story of Colonel Cleveland.
9. Name some of the patriot leaders in that part of the State.
10. Name parts of North Carolina that had no Tories? Where were they numerous?

CHAPTER XXIX.

FOUR UNEVENTFUL YEARS.

Comparatie Peace.—Although the Revolutionary war was being waged with bitterness in other States, there was comparative peace in North Carolina during the years 1776 to 1780, except for occasional conflicts between the Whigs and Tories. The Highlanders, after their signal defeat at Moore's Creek Bridge, remained quiet and attended to their daily duties during the remainder of the war. Many of the Regulators joined the patriot cause, but by far the larger number continued faithful to the king, but inactive. The Cherokees remembered the crushing defeat given them by Rutherford and remained in their mountain wigwams.

North Carolina at Germantown.—In the North the American army under General Washington suffered several defeats in 1776. At the close of that year the term of enlistment of many of the men had expired, and at the beginning of the campaign of 1777, Washington had only about seven thousand men with which to meet thirty thousand British. To relieve that distressing condition Governor Caswell sent four thousand North Carolinians to join the continental army at Philadelphia. General Francis Nash, Colonel Edward

Buncombe, Colonel Jethro Sumner and other gallant officers were in command. With these reinforcements Washington was able to give battle at Brandywine and again at Germantown, but was defeated at both places. In the latter battle General Nash was slain and Colonel Edward Buncombe mortally wounded while leading their commands against the enemy. Many of the rank and file were also slain in these disastrous battles.

Gathering of Tories at St. Augustine.—Early in 1776, John Hamilton, a Tory merchant of Halifax considering it unsafe to remain longer in his home town, left North Carolina and went to St. Augustine, Fla., where he set up the standard of King George and invited the sympathizers of the royal cause in North Carolina and the South to join him. In a brief time he found himself at the head of a well equipped regiment of North Carolinians who had fled from their homes as soon as the patriots had begun to take charge of matters in their neighborhoods. This regiment of Tories with Hamilton at their head joined the British army in the South and became an important part of Cornwallis' army of invasion a few years later.

Disaster in Georgia.—General Robert Howe had been put in command of the American forces in Georgia in 1778. He had with him several regiments of North Carolina soldiers besides those of the Georgia and South Carolina lines. In December of that year he was attacked at Savannah by an overwhelming British force and compelled to retreat, giving up the whole of southern Geor-

gia to the enemy. Howe was severely criticized on account of this defeat and, at his own request, was shortly afterward relieved of his command and appointed to the command of a division in the army of the north, where he served with distinction the remainder of the war. March 3, 1779, General John Ashe, was defeated at Briar Creek on the Savannah River by a superior British force under General Prevost. North Carolina troops suffered greatly in these two disastrous defeats.

Georgia Overrun by the British.—After these two signal defeats, Georgia was completely overrun, the Whig government overthrown, and a Tory government set up. The patriot troops that escaped the disasters at Savannah and Brier Creek fled to South Carolina and joined the army of the South, in command of General Benjamin Lincoln at Charleston, thus leaving Georgia to the mercy of the British.

Articles of Confederation.—Soon after the Declaration of Independence was signed at Philadelphia, July 4, 1776, the Thirteen States entered into an agreement with one another to act together in resisting the designs of the British government and in achieving the independence which had been declared. North Carolina's three representatives, William Hooper, John Penn, and Joseph Hewes, who had signed the Declaration and committed their lives, their fortunes, and their sacred honor to its achievement, now united with other representatives in drawing up a form of gov-

ernment for the mutual advantage and protection of the States during the continuance of the war. This instrument of government, called the Articles of Confederation, was submitted to the people of the States for their approval. The Articles were approved by North Carolina in 1778.

Confiscation of Tory Property.—All property in the State owned by Tories was seized by the government in 1776 and held in trust. A confiscation act was passed by the General Assembly in 1778 giving the State the right not only to seize and appropriate the property of Tories, but also to take possession of all lands in the State owned by persons living in England. Lands belonging to Lord Granville, Governor Tryon, Governor Martin and other English subjects thus passed forever from their possession.

John Paul Jones.—In 1776, through the influence of Joseph Hewes, member of the Continental Congress from North Carolina, John Paul Jones, who afterwards became the first Admiral of the American navy, was appointed Captain of the gunboat Ranger. Jones, who was a native of Scotland was at that time living at Halifax. His name was John Paul, but he had taken the name of Jones after coming to North Carolina in compliment, it is said, to Willie Jones, of Halifax, who had befriended him and introduced him to Joseph Hewes. John Paul Jones afterwards became the most famout man in the American navy, and performed many deeds of heroism and daring on the sea.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Where is Germantown? St. Augustine? Savannah? Brier Creek?
2. What was the condition of the State from 1776 to 1780?
3. What were the Highlanders, Regulators and Indians doing?
4. What was the condition of Washington's army in 1777?
5. What reinforcement did Caswell send Washington?
6. Tell something of the battle and losses at Germantown?
7. When and how did Hamilton raise a regiment of Tories?
8. What disaster occurred in Georgia?
9. Where was General Howe sent and why?
10. How was Georgia treated by the British?
11. What became of the Whig forces in Georgia?
12. What kind of a Confederation was adopted in 1778?
13. What was done with Tory and British property in the State?
14. Was that treatment right? Who lost estates?
15. Give the facts about John Paul Jones.

CHAPTER XXX.

BATTLE OF RAMSEUR'S MILL.

Fall of Charleston.—In May, 1780, after a seige of several months, Charleston, S. C., was surrendered to the British. General Benjamin Lincoln who had succeeded General Robert Howe in command of the army of the South, and about five thousand American soldiers became prisoners of war. More than three thousand North Carolina veterans were among them. South Carolina was now at the mercy of the invaders, and British solders were marching hither and thither to put down in that State the last vestige of resistance to the king.

Conquest of North Carolina Threatened.—After Cornwallis, the British leader, had completed the conquest of South Carolina, he began to make preparation to march into North Carolina to carry out his scheme of further conquest, which was first to seize Charlotte, organize a Tory government at Hillsboro, and march north to finish his southern campaign by the subjugation of Virginia Accordingly, he sent Colonel Tarleton with his dragoons toward the North Carolina line, and, at the same time, dispatched Lord Rawdon with a considerable infantry force against Charlotte,

while he himself lingered behind to bring up the main army.

Rising of the Tories.—The success of the British in South Carolina and Georgia had greatly encouraged the North Carolina Tories, and they began to assemble in large numbers at different points ready to join Cornwallis as soon as he should come into the State. Hundreds of them gathered at Ramseur's Mill, Colson's Mill, and the Forks of the Yadkin, and awaited Cornwallis' bugle call.

North Carolina Patriots.—North Carolina, however, was not crouching at the feet of the conqueror. Nearly all the regular troops of the State had been lost, it is true, by the fall of Charleston but the militia was still active and vigilant. Caswell, upon his retirement from the governorship in December, had been made brigadier-general of the State troops in the eastern district. General Griffith Rutherford was in command of the western division. These two wide-awake officers were active in maintaining their forces and in watching the enemy. Besides, there were two other officers that were vigilant in this time of trial and danger These were Colonel William L. Davidson and Major William R. Davie. Governor Abner Nash, who had succeeded Caswell, exerted himself to have the militia in as fine shape as possible to withstand the threatened invasion.

Assembling of the Patriots.—About the first of June, 1780, General Rutherford issued a call for all patriots of his district to gather at Charlotte

to resist the expected attack. Nine hundred men obeyed the call. Tarleton heard of this and retreated toward Charleston. Rutherford organized the militia into companies of minute men, and dismissed them with instructions to reassemble at a minute's notice. In a few days it was learned that Lord Rawdon, with a strong British force was advancing toward Charlotte and that the Tories were assembling in large numbers at various places. To meet this great danger both from without and within General Rutherford called for the minute men to muster at McRee's Plantation on June 12th. About one thousand responded and these were divided into three corps. Major Davie was given the command of the cavalry. The light infantry, consisting of three hundred picked men, was assigned to Colonel Davidson who had served with distinction under General Washington in the army of the North. General Rutherford assumed immediate command of the remainder. The three commands moved by concerted action to meet Rawdon. That officer, however, did not await their approach, but retired to Camden, South Carolina, to join Cornwallis.

Expedition Against the Tories.—Rutherford, finding that Rawdon was in full retreat, resolved to attack and disperse the Tories. Accordingly he sent Colonel Francis Locke and Major David Wilson, with about three hundred men, to watch the movements of the Tories, and if possible, to attack and disperse them. Locke and Wilson were joined later by Colonels Joseph McDowell

and Hugh Brevard with small forces. Other recruits were added as they proceeded until the little army numbered about four hundred men Colonel Locke had information that Colonel John Moore and Major Nicholas Welch, two notorious Tories, had assembled thirteen hundred men at Ramseur's Mill in what is now Lincoln County, and were ready to join the British army as soon as Cornwallis should enter the State.

Battle of Ramseur's Mill.—Locke moved cautiously against the Tories and arrived on June 19th within sixteen miles of their camp. At a council of war it was decided that, notwithstanding the Tories had a superior force, the patriot army should march to the neighborhood of the Tory Camp before daybreak and attack them at sunrise The plan was carried out and the attack made resulting in a decisive victory for the patriots and a complete rout of the Tories. In the battle which raged fiercely for several hours, the two commands became so mixed that the only way that Whigs and Tories could be distinguished from each other was by the sprigs of green pine on the caps of the Tories and pieces of white paper on those of the Whigs. Friends, neighbors and relatives were pitted against each other in this blody struggle. Colonel Moore, with about sixty-five Tories, found his way to Cornwallis in South Carolina, but the rest of the command were either killed, captured or dispersed beyond the chance of reassembling. About three hundred lay dead or wounded on the field. General Ruther-

ford arrived after the battle had ended, and a few days thereafter marched to the Forks of the Yadkin and dispersed Colonel Bryan's regiment of Tories that had begun to collect at that point. Colonel Davidson marched against the loyalists at Colson's Mill, drove them from their position with considerable loss, and dispersed them; but was himself severely wounded in the conflict. Thus North Carolina was saved for a time from invasion.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Point out on the map Lincolnton; Camden.
2. How many North Carolina troops were lost at Charleston?
3. What did Cornwallis begin to do after the conquest of South Carolina?
4. Where did he send Tarlton and Rawdon?
5. At what points did the Tories assemble?
6. What North Carolina patriots are mentioned?
7. Tell how the patriots were organized in June.
8. Why did Tarleton retreat? Rawdon?
9. How did the minuet men organize?
10. Whom did Rutherford send against the Tories at Remseur's Mill?
11. Give names of other leaders.
12. How did the two armies compare in numbers?
13. Give an account of the battle.
14. What were the losses?
15. Where were other conflicts?

CHAPTER XXXI.

THE HORNETS' NEST.

Davie at Hanging Rock.—When Colonel Bryan fled from the Forks of the Yadkin with his Tory regiment, on the approach of Colonel Rutherford Major Davie at the head of his dragoons hastened to the Waxhaw settlement, in what in now Union County, hoping to intercept him at that point. Bryan had passed before Davie's arrival, and, with about eight hundred Tories, joined the British garison at Hanging Rock, South Carolina. Davie continued his march to the neighborhood of the British position, and, there meeting a regiment of South Carolina troops under Colonel Sumter, the two commands made a vigorous attack upon the enemy in their entrenchments. It happened that during the bloody conflict that followed, Davie's dragoons were pitted against Bryan's regiment North Carolinians against North Carolinians, and each command met foemen worthy of their steel. Davie charged the Tory lines with spirit and after a hand to hand struggle routed and drove them from the field with heavy losses. The British regulars, however, stood their ground and the patriots withdrew after having inflicted upon the enemy a loss of over two hundred dead and wounded.

Disastrous Battle at Camden.—In the summer of 1780, General Horatio Gates, the victor at Saratoga, was put in command of the American army in the South. Before the troops were in a condition for an active campaign, Gates on August 15th, advanced against Cornwallis at Camden, South Carolina, intending to surprise him by a night attack. At the same time Cornwallis had set out to attack Gates. The two armies met in the darkness of the night, drew back from each other, and waited for daylight. In the battle that followed, on the 16th of August, the American army was totally defeated and almost entirely destroyed. The North Carolina soldiers performed heroic service, but it was all in vain. General Rutherford, with his North Carolinians, commanded the centre, and was severely wounded while cheering on his men, falling at last with the greater part of his command into the hands of the British. General Caswell led his men successfully until his left became exposed to a flank attack by the flight of Stevens' Virginians, when he retreated from the field. General Isaac Gregory, who led a brigade from eastern North Carolina, was also severely wounded and forced to flee. Colonel "Hal" Dixon's regiment of North Carolinians and DeKalb's Marylanders maintained their ground and beat back every advance of the enemy until DeKalb was himself slain and the two commands completely outflanked, when Dixon retreated in good order and escaped capture. More than half of the North Carolina line was either killed or cap-

tured in this disastrous battle. General Gates who never issued a command during the battle fled early in the conflict and did not stop until he reached Hillsboro, more than a hundred miles from the scene of the battle. After delaying a few days at Camden, Cornwallis began to move against Charlotte. There was no force to oppose his advance except Davie's dragoons, who had not been in the battle of Camden.

Davie Retards the British Advance.—Major Davie hung on the rear and flanks of the British as they advanced into North Carolina, and was ever on the alert for an opportunity to strike Cornwallis a blow. Sometimes, at full speed, his dragoons would charge directly into the vanguard of the British army and be off before Cornwallis could order a counter charge. Again, they would gallop round to the rear of the enemy, put spurs to their horses, and ride into the midst of a wagon train, striking down horses and drivers in great confusion, and retreat before reinforcements could be sent to the scene. Thus Davie and his dragoons gave Cornwallis no little trouble as he advanced toward Charlotte.

Attack on Charlotte.—About the last of September, 1780, the British came in sight of the village of Charlotte. Davie's dragoons had gotten there ahead of them and had taken post behind a stone-wall near the Courthouse, determined to give the invaders a taste of what they might expect if they remained in North Carolina. Cornwallis urged his men forward to an attack upon the patriots behind

the stonewall. The dragoons poured upon them a destructive fire and the redcoats fled in terror Cornwallis ordered them a second time to the charge, but again they were beaten back with loss Seeing his men driven back by a handful of patriots, Cornwallis sent a detachment to attack the dragoons in the rear. Davie then sounded a retreat, and the heroic little band retired toward Salisbury, pursued by a superior British force Several times during the retreat Davie turned upon his pursuers and inflicted severe loss. In this skirmish and retreat the British lost about fifty killed and wounded, while the patriots lost ten Major Joseph Graham was severely wounded on the retreat.

Affair at McIntyre's.—While at Charlotte, Cornwallis sent out several parties to get provisions for his men. One of these parties, consisting of four hundred men, was sent to McIntyre's farm, about seven miles from Charlotte to bring back loads of farm products. As the foraging party proceeded word was sent from house to house that they were coming. Mr. McIntyre and his family fled to the woods, and sent out to gather assistance to drive the invaders back. Major George Graham and a few daring men came to the rescue. The British came to the farm and loaded up their wagons with meat, chickens, fruit, and vegetables Just as the foragers were ready to return to Charlotte, the patriots hidden in the woods crept up as close as they could and fired a volley into their midst, killing and wounding several. There

was great confusion among the British as the bullets began to fly. Plucking up courage their men-at-arms charged into the woods, but they could not find the patriots, and so gave up the fight, fleeing in haste toward Charlotte. The patriots pursued them to the town, inflicting upon them a loss of twenty-seven killed and wounded The British, in their terror, declared the country was full of rebels and every bush along the road concealed one or more. Cornwallis himself said that the counties of Mecklenburg and Rowan were more hostile to England than any in America. He had gotten into a hornets' nest by coming to Charlotte.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

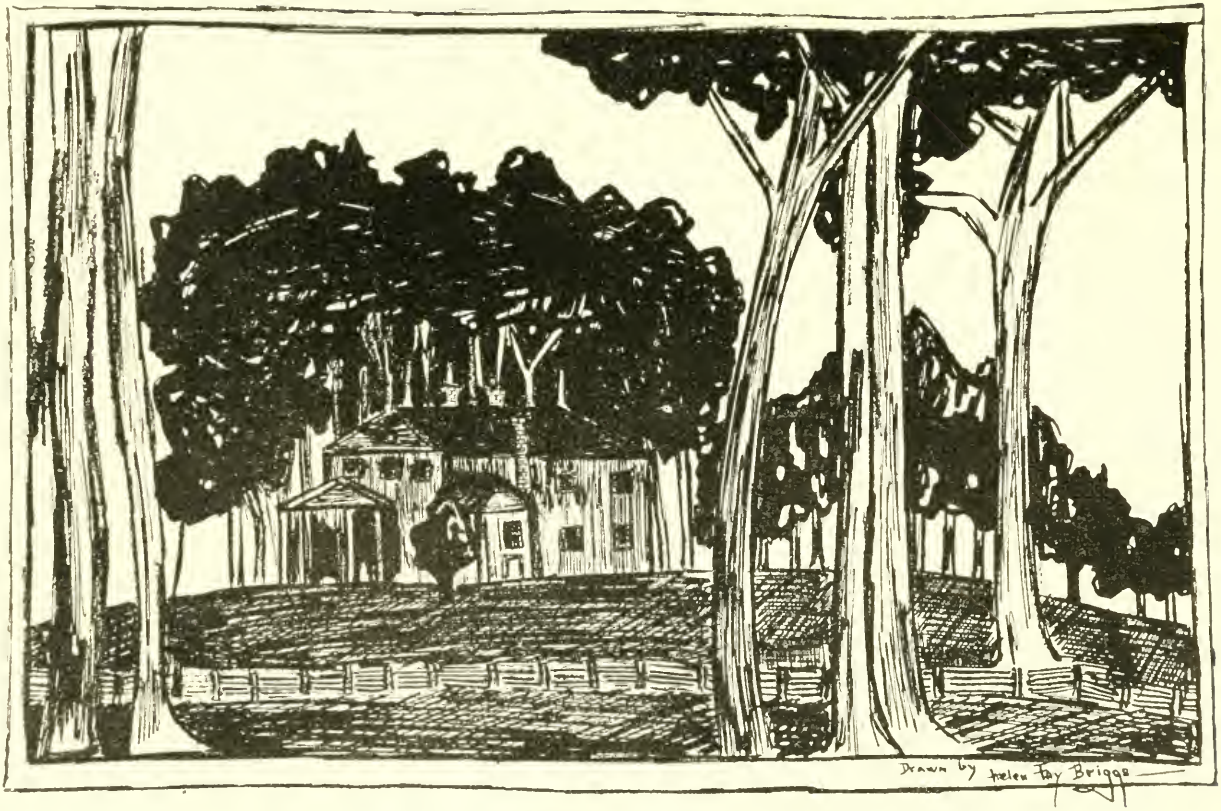
1. Locate the following: Hanging Rock, Waxhaw, Camden, Salisbury.
2. Why did Davie go to the Waxham settlement?
3. Tell of his attack on Hanging Rock.
4. Give a brief account of the battle of Camden
5. What North Carolina officers were in the battle?
6. How did the defeat open North Carolina to invasion?
7. When did Cornwallis begin his advance upon Charlotte?
8. How did Major Davie annoy him?
9. Give an account of the conflict at Charlotte.
10. Give an account of the affair at McIntyre's.
11. What did Cornwallis say of Mecklenburg and Rowan?

CHAPTER XXXII.

BATTLE OF KING'S MOUNTAIN.

Mission of Colonel Ferguson.—Before Cornwallis left Camden for Charlotte, where he got into a hornets' nest, he sent Colonel Patrick Ferguson with one hundred and fifty men to western North Carolina to rouse the Tories and to secure provisions. Ferguson was one of the bravest and most skillful officers in the British army. Cornwallis had great confidence in him and expected complete success from the expedition. After several battles with the patriots under Colonels Shelby and McDowell near the boundary of North and South Carolina, Ferguson advanced to Gilberttown in what is now Rutherford County. While encamped there he issued a proclamation calling upon all Tories in the western counties to join him, and commanding all rebels to the king to disperse and become again loyal subjects of England. About twelve hundred Tories joined him, but the patriots instead of being alarmed, began to lay plans for Ferguson's overthrow.

Message to Colonel Shelby.—Ferguson sent a message to Colonel Isaac Shelby, a sturdy patriot living in what is now East Tennessee, commanding him to disband his forces and immediately swear allegiance to the king, threatening in case



The Grove House, Halifax, N. C.

of a refusal to come with his army to burn the homes and put to the sword every rebel in that part of the country. Shelby was not frightened at such threats, and sent Ferguson word to do his worst. The hardy settlers in the valleys of the French Broad and the Tennessee heard of the message and vowed vengeance upon the insolent Briton.

Assembling of the Backwoodsmen.—In consequence of these exchanges of messages there was great excitement among the mountain people Word was sent from settlement to settlement urging every man to assemble at Sycamore Shoals on Sept. 25th, and to bring whatever weapons that could be gotten together. About fourteen hundred came with hunting rifles, sabres, and pistols. Colonel Campbell, a Virginia patriot, was chosen by a council of officers commander-in-chief, and Colonels Isaac Shelby, John Sevier, Joseph McDowell and Benjamin Cleveland advisory commanders.

March Over the Mountains.—After a few days of drilling and instruction, the hastily gathered army was ready for the difficult journey over the mountains. Parson Doak, a well-beloved minister of the community, pronounced his blessing upon the campaign, and exhorted the backwoodsmen to go and smite the enemy with the sword of the Lord and of Gideon. Fearing that Ferguson would change his mind and not stand his ground, these rough and ready mountaineers galloped by day and night to overtake him before he could escape if he should decide to attempt flight. On through

the defiles of the mountains they hurried, anxious to meet the haughty Briton who had threatened to burn their homes. As they proceeded other patriots joined them until there were eighteen hundred bold and determined men hurrying like a tornado to crush Ferguson and his minions. Ferguson soon heard that he had raised a storm in the land of the sky, and began to flee before it. He broke up his camp at Gilberttown and retreated toward Charlotte, and at the same time sent an urgent appeal to Cornwallis for reinforcements.

Nine Hundred Chosen Men.—When the backwoodsmen reached Quaker Meadows, in Burke County, they learned that Ferguson had broken camp and was hurrying to Charlotte. To prevent his escape Colonel Campbell selected nine hundred and ten of the fleetest horsemen and went on in rapid pursuit, while the remainder of the army followed as best they could. These chosen warriors, mounted on fiery steeds, pushed on and overtook Ferguson at Kings Mountain, Oct. 7, 1780. Ferguson had halted on top of the mountain and had strongly fortified his position. He boasted that "all the rebels in hell" and God himself could not drive him from that stronghold.

The Battle on the Mountain.—As soon as they came in sight of the British, the patriots halted and made arrangements for immediate battle. They tied their horses in the woods, formed in four columns, and advanced to the attack. Colonels Campbell and Shelby led the attack on one side of the mountain, while Colonels Cleveland, Sevier

and Williams closed in on the other sides. Ferguson and his men fought like demons to break this circle of death which was fast closing around them At the head of his men, Ferguson blowing his keen whistle charged first one column and then another but was each time beaten back by the unerring and deadly fire of the patriots, whose steady aim brought many horses and riders to the ground At last Ferguson himself leading the last charge was pierced by seven bullets and fell dead at the head of the column. Seeing the fall of their leader Depeyster, second in command, raised the white flag and surrendered the survivors as prisoners of war. The losses of the British were heavy in comparison with the number engaged. Of the British and Tories 119 were slain, 123 wounded, and the remainder, 664, were captured. The patriot loss was 28 killed and 62 wounded.

Return of the Backwoodsmen.—Immediately after the battle, the officers of the mountaineers held a council of war and decided that nine of the captured Tories were criminals and deserved death They were promptly hanged. Then the backwoodsmen gave over their prisoners to the State authorities and returned to their mountain homes They had been away about a month and had gained one of the most brilliant victories of the Revolution.

Retreat of Cornwallis.—Cornwallis heard with amazement of the death of Ferguson and the destruction of his command. He at once concluded that North Carolina was too much of a hornets'

nest for him. He therefore, left Charlotte and retreated to Winnsboro, South Carolina, thus postponing his threatened conquest of the State to another year. The patriots throughout the State were elated over the results of the different campaigns of the year, for they had beaten the British and Tories at nearly every important point and had saved North Carolina from the fate which had befallen Georgia and South Carolina.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Where is Rutherford County? The French Broad River? The Tennessee?
2. Point out Sycamore Shoals; Quaker Meadows; Kings Mountain.
3. Why was Ferguson sent to Western North Carolina? Where did he go?
4. What proclamation did he issue there?
5. What did the patriots begin to do?
6. What message was sent to Colonel Shelby? How did Shelby regard the message?
7. When and where did the backwoodsmen assemble? How many?
8. Who were chosen leaders?
9. What did they fear Ferguson would do?
10. How many joined them on the way?
11. What did Ferguson do when he heard of their approach?
12. Where was he overtaken? What was his boast?
13. What was the plan of the patriots' attack?

14. Relate the story of the battle.
15. What were the losses?
16. What did the backwoodsmen do after the battle?
17. How long had they been in arms?
18. What did Cornwallis do when he heard of Ferguson's defeat?
19. How did the patriots feel over the results of the campaigns?
20. From what had North Carolina been saved?

CHAPTER XXXIII.

THIRD ATTEMPT TO CONQUER NORTH CAROLINA.

General Greene Takes Command.—After the signal defeat of Gates at Camden, August 16, 1780, all eyes turned to General Nathanael Greene of Rhode Island, as the right man to measure arms with Cornwallis in the South. Accordingly, when General Gates tendered his resignation in September, General Washington offered the command of the army in the South to General Greene, who immediately accepted, and arrived at Charlotte in November to assume direction of the army stationed at or near that place. About five thousand men were in arms in the State, but they were badly scattered and poorly equipped. Generals Sumner and Davidson, with the bulk of the army, were stationed at Charlotte. General Gregory was in eastern North Carolina with a brigade of minute men. Besides these, there were small commands at Hillsboro, Salisbury, and Fayetteville.

Organization and Discipline.—General Greene had a difficult task before him, but he did not shrink from it. He organized the scattered troops drilled the untrained soldiers, and in a comparatively brief time had a well-disciplined army anxious to meet the foe in battle. Colonel Davie was

appointed commissary-general, and he entered upon his duties with skill and energy, and during the long campaign that followed supplied the army with all necessary articles, both of food and clothing.

Greene Divides His Forces.—In the face of great difficulties and dangers, Greene adopted a vigorous policy. He began his campaign against Cornwallis early in January, 1781. Separating his army into two divisions, he sent one into South Carolina to check Tarleton, who was operating in the northwestern part of that State, but held one at Charlotte to watch the movements of Cornwallis. The division sent into South Carolina consisted of 300 continentals, about 300 North Carolina volunteers under Colonel Joseph McDowell, and some South Carolina and Virginia militia, the whole being in command of General Daniel Morgan, of Virginia a hard fighter who had seen service at Saratoga and Monmouth in the North. Morgan was instructed to find Tarleton and, if possible, to destroy his command.

Battle of Cowpens.—Morgan proceeded to the western part of South Carolina and found Colonel Tarleton near the site of the present city of Spartanburg. Both commands were anxious for battle, for each expected victory over the other. January 17, 1780, the two met at Cowpens, not far from the boundary line between the two states. Tarleton had eleven hundred well-trained British soldiers while Morgan had barely eight hundred untried men. Tarleton threw his disciplined troops against

the North Carolinians in the first line, but was met with a steady fire and thrown into confusion. Colonel William Washington led the continentals in a sabre charge and turned the confusion of the enemy into a rout. Tarleton was pursued twenty miles, and in the retreat was wounded in the hand by a sabre stroke from Colonel Washington, and came near falling into the hands of the Americans In this brilliant exploit the British lost 784 men either killed, wounded, or captured. The American loss was 12 killed and 60 wounded. A large number of wagons, horses, muskets, and sabres fell into the hands of Morgan. Tarleton fled almost alone to the camp of Cornwallis and announced the disaster.

Race to the Catawba.—Cornwallis was greatly chagrined when he heard of the utter rout of his favorite lieutenant. He determined to march at once against Morgan and pluck from him the rewards of his victory. The American general was expecting such a move, and, gathering up his spoils and prisoners, he set out to rejoin General Greene on the Catawba River, in North Carolina. Cornwallis quickly discerned the intention of Morgan, and marched with his light armed troops to overtake him. The Americans had twenty-four hours the start, and by forced marches won the race, reaching the fords of the Catawba in time to cross before the British appeared in pursuit.

Death of General Davidson.—General William L. Davidson with three hundred North Carolina militia was stationed at Cowan's Ford on the

Ford where Cornwallis crossed the Yadkin River in pursuit of Gen. Greene.

Catawba River to check the British, if they should attempt to cross at that place, while Morgan, now united with Greene, continued the retreat toward Salisbury. On the morning of February 1st, before sunrise, the British began to cross the river at two places, Cowan's Ford and a few miles above at Beatty's Ford. Cornwallis himself was leading at the former place. Davidson's command on the left bank of the river discovered the advance soon after the enemy started from the opposite side, and poured into their ranks a destructive fire, killing and wounding about forty. Cornwallis's horse was killed under him, and Cornwallis himself fell headlong into the water, but was rescued. The British continued to advance, however, and, reaching the shore, drove Davidson's little command from their position. Just as General Davidson was in the act of mounting his horse to follow his men in their retreat, he was shot down by a Tory, who knew him, and instantly killed.

Skirmish at Torrence's Tavern.—Davidson's small command made another stand at Torrence's Tavern, six miles from the ford on the way to Salisbury; but being without a leader they were easily beaten by Tarleton who furiously attacked and drove them from the field. Shortly afterward the scattered command reassembled, and, choosing General Andrew Pickens to succeed the lamented Davidson, they hung on the rear of Cornwallis's army, cutting off straggiers and foragers on the memorable retreat and pursuit from the Catawba to the Dan.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Where is Spantanburg? Cowpens? Guilford Courthouse?
2. Point out the Catawba River; Cowan's Ford; Beattie's Ford.
3. Who was put in command of the Southern army? His first efforts?
4. What forces were in arms in the State?
5. Where did Greene send a division of his army?
6. Where did Morgan meet Tarleton? Give an account of the battle.
7. Tell the story of the race to the Catawba.
8. Tell what happened at Cowan's Ford.
9. How was Davidson killed?
10. What happened at Torrence's Tavern?
11. Who succeeded Davidson? What did the command do?

CHAPTER XXXIV.

GREENE'S RETREAT TO THE DAN.

Greene Retreats to Salisbury.—Now began one of the most famous retreats in history. Greene with but a small command, hurried from Cowan's Ford to Salisbury, intending to go to Guilford Courthouse, where he expected to be joined by the main army under General Huger. He knew he was not able yet to give battle to Cornwallis for his army was too small and the men too wearied by the long march from South Carolina.

Generosity of Mrs. Steele.—As the American army was passing Salisbury on February 1, 1781 General Greene rode up to the door of Mrs. Elizabeth Steele, a patriotic lady of the place, and asked to be allowed to rest there for a few hours. Being admitted, Greene introduced himself as an American general "fatigued, hungry, alone, and penniless." Dr. Reid, a brother of Mrs. Steele, in charge of the sick and wounded soldiers at Salisbury at the time, was present and recognized General Greene, bidding him welcome to the house and what it contained. Soon a bountiful supper was prepared for the tired and hungry general, and while he was eating, Mrs. Steele came into the room with two bags of gold and silver, which she placed on the table.

"General Greene," said she, "I overheard your remark about being penniless, and I wish to give you some of my earnings. Take these bags of specie, for you will need them and I can get along without them."

This generous contribution came at a time when it was most needed, and Greene accepted it gratefully.

Greene and the Picture.—Hanging on the wall in Mrs. Steele's dining room was a picture of King George III. Filled with sorrow at the sufferings of his countrymen, caused by the tyranny of the same king, General Greene took the picture from the wall and wrote upon the back,

"O George! hide thy face and mourn."

He then replaced the picture with its face to the wall, and soon thereafter left the house and rejoined his troops.

Passage of the Yadkin.—Pushing on with the utmost expedition, Greene reached the fords of the Yadkin River, and crossed in safety as the pursuing enemy came in sight. Here a kind Providence befriended the American army. Cornwallis came up and halted for the night, but while he rested the rains fell in torrents and rendered the river unfordable. As a consequence the next day the British army was compelled to march thirty miles up the river and cross at Shallow Ford. Meanwhile Greene was hastening on toward Guilford Courthouse.

Death of the Bugler Boy.—Cornwallis was anxious to overtake Greene and force him to battle

He, therefore, sent forward Tarleton and his dragoons to hang on the rear of the American army, and, if possible, to bring on an engagement. Greene ordered his calvary division, under Colonel "Light Horse Harry" Lee, of Virginia, to watch Tarleton and check any attack he might make. The two division were in frequent collision. One morning while the patriots were eating breakfast the report came that Tarleton's dragoons were bearing down upon them. Lee with a small force galloped back to meet the enemy, but as the British delayed their coming he sent some of his men back to camp while he and the others concealed themselves by the roadside. Soon a squad of troopers rapidly passed and charged upon the few that were returning to camp, among whom was a bugler boy named Gillies, about fifteen years of age, mounted upon a lame horse. Gillies was cut down by a sabre stroke and mortally wounded The others escaped. Lee followed the troopers as they passed and reached the scene in time to see a British soldier strike the bugler boy from his horse. Lee was enraged to see a defenseless boy thus slain. He, therefore, ordered his men to charge the enemy and spare not a man. Every one of the enemy was either killed, wounded or taken prisoner.

How a Culprit Escaped.—Colonel Lee hastened to the wounded bugler boy and found him still alive. The boy pointed out to Lee the man who had struck him down. Lee immediately ordered the British culprit hanged, but just as the execu-

tioners were about to swing him to a limp, the whole of Tarleton's command came in sight, and Lee was forced to retreat as rapidly as possible. The prisoners were taken along, and in a few days sent on to Virginia. In that way the murderer of the boy bugler escaped the fate he richly deserved. Poor Gillies died on the retreat and was buried by the roadside. A monument has been erected to his memory at the Guilford battle ground.

Race to the Dan.—Cornwallis hoped to cut Greene off at the Dan River. For that purpose he sent some of his fleetest horsemen by way of the Moravian settlement in Forsyth County while the main army pressed hard upon Greene's rear guard It was now a race for the sheltering waters of the Dan. Greene's army had rested three days at Guilford Courthouse and was in the best of spirits. Huger had joined him, and the united forces were now on their mettle. Cornwallis felt sure of his quarry, but was again disappointed. Greene reached the Dan and passed over with his entire army before Cornwallis arrived. All the boats were taken to the north side of the river, so that when the British came up they found no means of crossing. Cornwallis now gave up the race and retired to Hillsboro, whence he issued a proclamation claiming North Carolina as conquered and inviting all loyal subjects of the king to assist him in establishing Royal rule.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Where is the Yadkin River? Dan River? Forsyth County?
2. Where did Greene go from Cowan's Ford? Where was the main army?
3. Relate the story of Mrs. Steele's generosity; Greene and the picture.
4. What happened at the Yadkin River? What did Cornwallis do?
5. What was Tarleton ordered to do? Who protected Greene's rear?
6. Relate the story of the bugler boy.
7. How did the murderer escape hanging?
8. Where did Cornwallis hope to overtake Greene? How was he disappointed?
9. Where did Cornwallis go?
10. What proclamation did he issue?

CHAPTER XXXV.

PYLE'S HACKING MATCH.

Rise of the Tories.—Cornwallis's proclamation at Hillsboro was the signal for the rise of the Tories in all parts of the State. Hundreds of them came flocking to the British army, and hundreds of others organized and sent word to Cornwallis that they were ready to join him at a moment's notice. Many supposed that Greene had fled the State and that the patriot cause was lost. The Whigs, however, were far from being conquered and were only waiting for a good opportunity to strike a telling blow.

General Pickens and the Militia.—After the defeat of Davidson's command at Torrence's Tavern the disorganized remnant met and elected General Andrew Pickens of South Carolina to succeed the lamented Davidson, as has already been related. Pickens was with them at the time as a refugee and at once assumed command, following Cornwallis across the State in his pursuit of Greene and hanging hard upon his rear.

Graham's Exploit at Hart's Mill.—When Cornwallis turned to Hillsboro from the pursuit of Greene, Pickens followed him and encamped not far from that town, watching for an opportunity to do something to encourage the patriots and to

prevent the rising of the Tories. Hearing that Cornwallis had established a picket post at Hart's Mill, near Hillsboro, General Pickens sent Major Joseph Graham, with a small force, to destroy it At daybreak, February 18, 1781, Graham charged the post and captured it with twenty-five prisoners. This daring feat was accomplished within one and a half miles of Cornwallis's headquarters at Hillsboro. Graham retreated to Stony Creek with his prisoners, where he rejoined General Pickens.

Lee Joins Pickens.—While the patriots were encamped at Stony Creek the alarm was given one morning, that the enemy was approaching Pickens ordered his men under arms, expecting Tarleton's dragoons to burst upon them, but he was overjoyed to find it was "Light Horse Harry" Lee with his Virginia troopers, who had been sent into North Carolina ahead of Greene to watch the movements of the Tories.

Colonel John Pyle.—One of the most active partisans of the king in North Carolina at this time was Colonel John Pyle, who was organizing the Tories in Orange and Chatham counties. He had embodied about four hundred men and was holding them in camp waiting for orders from Cornwallis.

Lee and Pickens in Search of Tarleton.—In a few days after the junction of the forces under Lee and Pickens, it was learned that Cornwallis had sent Colonel Tarleton to Guilford County to rouse the Tories in that section. Lee and Pickens

decided to follow Tarleton, and, if possible, destroy his command. With that object in view they set out in search of the British leader, hoping to overtake him before he could form a junction with any Tory force that might be near.

Defeat of Colonel Pyle.—Knowing there were Tories in the neighborhood. Lee and Pickens thought it would be best to pass as British soldiers coming from Hillsboro to reinforce Tarleton Orders were, therefore, given to the men to act as far as possible the part of British troops. Under those instructions the little patriot army proceeded disguised as best they could, expecting to overtake and attack Tarleton before he could accomplish his mission. As the command continued its march a courier approached and addressed Lee as Tarleton saying that Colonel Pyle was a short distance ahead and wished to unite his command of Tories with his. Lee saw the mistake and resolved to profit by it. He, therefore, told the courier to tell Colonel Pyle to draw up his forces on one side of the road and await orders Colonel Pyle did as requested. Lee led his dragoons along the line of Tories until he came to the head of the line where Pyle was. There he stopped and Pyle gave the military salute, saying that he had four hundred brave and loyal North Carolinians who desired to united with his majesty's forces for the purpose of restoring Royal rule in the State.

"Colonel Pyle," said Lee, "you are mistaken in the man. I am not Colonel Tarleton—I am Colonel Lee." At that Pyle drew his sword and

sounded a retreat. Lee was too quick for him and ordered a charge. In less than fifteen minutes 90 of the Tories lay dead on the field and the others either wounded or fleeing in every direction. Pyle himself was desperately wounded, but crawled into a pond of water, whence he was afterward rescued by his Tory friends. The patriots lost not a man but several were wounded. This battle, almost a massacre, called "Pyle's Hacking Match," occurred near the present town of Burlington.

Escape of Tarleton.—After this crushing defeat of the Tories, which occurred on February 25 1781, Lee and Pickens hastened on to attack Tarleton. About sunset they came within one mile of his camp and halted It was thought best to wait until morning before making the attack, as the soldiers were wearied with the marching and fighting of the day. So the patriots slept upon their arms, expecting severe fighting next day. During the night however, Tarleton, being informed of what had happened, broke camp and hurried with all speed back to Hillsboro. Next morning the Americans began pursuit, but could not overtake him. By forced marches Tarleton reached the main army, glad enough to escape the patriot forces that were at his heels.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Where is Burlington? Guilford County?
2. What caused the Tories to rise? Who was Colonel Pickens?
3. Relate the attack on Hart's Mill. Who joined Pickens at Stony Creek?
4. Who was Colonel Pyle? For whom were Lee and Pickens looking?
5. Relate particulars of Pyle's defeat. How many Tories were killed?
6. How did Colonel Pyle escape? How did Tarleton escape?

CHAPTER XXXVI.

BATTLE OF GUILFORD COURTHOUSE.

Greene Recrosses the Dan.—Having rested his army for a week on the north bank of the Dan River, General Greene quietly recrossed that stream on February 23rd and retraced his steps to Guilford Courthouse. While in Virginia he had received considerable reinforcements, and now with an army of over five thousand men he felt strong enough to risk a battle with Cornwallis. With that in view he sent his cavalry under General Otho H. Williams toward Hillsboro, hoping thereby to draw the British general from his fortified camp. At the same time he sent messengers into the neighboring counties to tell the minute men to join him at Guilford Courthouse early in March With the main army Greene encamped at the Speedwell Iron Works on Troublesome Creek.

Affair at Whitsell's Mill.—As soon as he heard of the disaster to Colonel Pyle, Cornwallis broke camp at Hillsboro and marched to Alamance Creek. Here he was informed that Greene had re-entered the State and was advancing to give him battle. Cornwallis was eager for the chance to meet Greene, and at once set out for Guilford Courthouse. General Williams, in command of the patriot cavalry, took position at Whitsell's Mill.

directly in the path of Cornwallis. Captain John Armstrong with a company of sharpshooters was stationed near the mill with the creek between himself and the on-coming enemy. Colonel Webster led the British attacking party, and, mounted on his war-horse, plunged into the creek, leading his men in a gallant charge. Armstrong ordered his men to aim at the intrepid horseman, and thirty-two volleys were fired at him, but he escaped unhurt. Seeing that he could not hold the mill Armstrong retreated and with Williams rejoined Greene, who had now advanced to Guilford Courthouse. For several days there were movements and counter movements by the two armies, each commander trying to catch the other off his guard

Greene Prepares for Battle.—March 8th the two armies encamped eight miles apart, Greene at Guilford Courthouse and Cornwallis on Deep River. Early on the morning of March 15, 1781, Greene's scouts reported the whole British army advancing by the Salisbury road. At once Greene prepared for battle, drawing up his army in three lines The first line was composed of about one thousand North Carolina militia under Generals Eaton and Butler. These were ordered to fire two rounds upon the enemy at close range and retire behind the second line, which was three hundred yards back of the first line and was composed mostly of Virginia militia and a few continentals, all under the command of General Stevens. The third line was four hundred yards behind the second and was made up of continental troops with the cav-

alry divisions of Colonels Lee and Washington protecting the flanks.

Cavalry Engagement.—Greene ordered Colonel Lee to advance to the front and attack the vanguard of the British. Proceeding a few miles, Lee came suddenly upon Tarleton's dragoons, who were marching in front of the British column. In the skirmish that followed about thirty of the British troopers were cut down in a charge headed by Captain Armstrong with practically no loss to the Americans. Lee then retreated in good order to the main body.

Beginning of the Battle.—As the British came up they were met by a steady and effective fire from the North Carolinians in the first line. Many of the militia in that line had never seen the face of an enemy before, and, being terrified at the sight of the advancing enemy, broke and fled almost without firing a shot. Most of the line however, behaved gallantly, and, after delivering their fire as commanded fell back in good order behind the second line, where the advance of the British was bravely sustained for a brief time by the Virginians, when they, too, fell back to the third line.

Charge of Colonel Washington.—Flushed with victory, the British infantry charged the third line, but were gallantly met by the Maryland and North Carolina regulars, and their advance checked Colonel Webster, who had escaped thirty-two shots at Whitsell's Mill, fell mortally wounded and many other officers and men went down b-

fore that murderous fire. But the British continued to advance, and finally the American line began to waver and the battle seemed lost. Just then Greene ordered Colonel Washington to lead his dragoons against the on-rushing enemy. At the head of his troops Washington charged into the ranks of the enemy and threw them into confusion. Cornwallis, seeing this desperate and successful charge, knew that it meant defeat for him unless some relief should quickly come. Accordingly, he ordered his artillery to open upon the struggling mass of British and Americans, and friend and foe were shot down together. Greene fearing the loss of his cavalry and learning that the British were outflanking him, sounded a retreat, and withdrew his army in good order from the field.

Greene Retreats in Goor Order.—Halting about three miles from the battlefield, Greene drew up his men in battle array to repel any attack that might be made; but Cornwallis was too crippled to follow. Greene retired leisurely to Troublesome Creek, and there fortified himself and awaited the coming of the British. Cornwallis, however, was in no condition to advance further. In this hotly contested battle the Americans numbered about five thousand, mostly untried militia, and the British twenty-five hundred regulars. The losses were about five hundred on each side. Cornwallis claimed the victory, but it was valueless to him.

Cornwallis on the Run.—Three days after the battle, Greene broke camp on Troublesome Creek

and advanced to attack Cornwallis, since the latter had failed to attack him. That discreet general however, did not wait for the attack, but retreated toward Wilmington. As soon as Greene discovered that Cornwallis was retreating he dispatched Colonels Lee and Washington in pursuit with instructions to cut him off, if possible, and bring him to bay. These brave patriots pursued the British to Deep River and inflicted considerable damage upon them. At Deep River Lee and Washington halted and awaited the arrival of the main army under Greene. At a council of war held at Deep River it was decided to allow the British to retreat unmolested, while Greene should prosecute the war in South Carolina. Cornwallis retreated to Wilmington, which he reached in April, and there rested his men from a most arduous campaign, in which he was unsuccessful in nearly every undertaking.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Where is Alamance Creek? Deep River? Troublesome Creek?
2. What was Greene's intention when he recross the Dan?
3. What word did he send out? Who responded?
4. Where did Cornwallis encamp? What happened at Whitsell's Mill?
5. Give Greene's battle formation at Guilford Courthouse.
6. Tell about the exploit of Captain Armstrong

7. Tell how the three lines behaved.
8. How did Cornwallis check the charge of Washington?
9. Why did Greene retreat? Why didn't Cornwallis pursue?
10. Give numbers and losses in the battle?
11. Tell what happened three days after the battle?
12. Who were sent in pursuit? Where did Cornwallis go? Greene?

CHAPTER XXXVII.

CORNWALLIS RETIRES TO VIRGINIA.

The British Capture Wilmington.—January 29 1781, Major James H. Craig, with a British force of 450 men, escorted by 18 warships, came into the Cape Fear River and demanded the surrender of Wilmington. As there was no patriot garrison to oppose him, the town fell into his hands without resistance. He established his headquarters there, and sent out marauding parties into the country around to capture the leading patriots of that portion of the State and to incite the Tories to arms.

Cornelius Harnett and John Ashe Captured.—Among the patriots captured by Craig's marauders were Cornelius Harnett and General John Ashe who were living at that time on their farms near Wilmington. Both were betrayed into the hands of Craig and thrown into loathesome dungeons Harnett had attempted flight, but was run down by the minions of Craig in Onslow County, bound hand and foot, thrown across a horse like a bag of meal, and brought to Wilmington. In prison Harnett contracted a fatal disease and died in April, 1781. Ashe was taken with smallpox, from which he died after a lingering confinement. Thus were two eminent patriots, who had sacrificed so

much for their country, cut down just as the star of independence began to rise.

Cornwallis Retreats From the State.—After a long march from Guilford Courthouse, Cornwallis reached Wilmington about the first of April, and gave his men the rest which they so much needed He did not, however, tarry long in Wilmington for he received orders to proceed to Virginia and there to begin operations which, it was hoped would draw General Washington from his siege of New York. Accordingly leaving Major Craig to direct the war in North Carolina, Cornwallis, about the last of April, marched north along the route now traversed by the Wilmington and Weldon Railroad. At that time General Alexander Lillington was stationed with about 500 men at Heron's Bridge. As Cornwallis marched out of Wilmington, Lillington put his men in motion with the idea of hindering the advance as much as possible. Instead of offering battle, however, he retired from before the British and allowed them to proceed Closing in, he hung upon the rear, cutting off foraging parties and annoying Cornwallis no little on the march northward. May 4th the British army arrived at Halifax where Governor Abner Nash and General Allen Jones had collected a considerable body of militia from Pitt, Halifax, Edgecombe, and Northampton counties. Upon the approach of Cornwallis, however, the patriot forces retreated. The British took possession of the town and encamped there for several days before proceeding to Virginia

Tarleton Defeated in a War of Words.—While at Halifax Colonel Tarleton and General Leslie, of the British army, became acquainted with Mrs Willie Jones and Mrs. Ashe, two patriotic ladies of the town. In the course of a conversation at the home of Mrs. Jones, Colonel Tarleton spoke slightingly of several of the American officers, and was specially severe in his cuts at Colonel William Washington.

"I should be glad to see Colonel Washington," said Tarleton, "in his ragged regimentals. I understand he is a rude country fellow."

"If you had looked behind you at the battle of Cowpens," replied Mrs Ashe, "you would have had that pleasure."

That remark nettled Tarleton, for he remembered well having seen a handsome young American officer pursuing him in that battle, and had been overtaken by him and in a personal conflict wounded in the hand. Being unable to control his anger at this bantering remark of Mrs. Ashe Tarleton swore vengeance upon Washington, denouncing him as an ignorant boor, who could scarcely write his name.

"He knows very well how to make his mark Colonel Tarleton," retorted Mrs. Jones. As she said this she looked at Tarleton's hand. Tarleton became enraged and grasped the hilt of his sword, but he was sternly rebuked by General Leslie and the incident closed.

The Last of Cornwallis—After a brief delay at Halifax, Cornwallis crossed the Roanoke River

and hastened on into Virginia. He had been in North Carolina about four months, and had met at every point, a most determined spirit of resistance. He found out that North Carolina could not easily be conquered and he was glad enough to get away from such a "hornets' nest." In Virginia he carried on an active warfare for some months, but was finally defeated and captured with his entire army at Yorktown, October 19, 1781 His reverses in North Carolina paved the way for his destruction in Virginia. Kings Mountain, Cowpens, and Guilford Courthouse were steps to his final overthrow at Yorktown.

Thomas Burke Elected Governor.—In June, 1781 Thomas Burke was elected governor to succeed Abner Nash, who had served one term and declined re-election. Burke was a man of considerable ability, and had served in the continental congress and on the battlefield. He was, therefore well equipped to serve his State at this critical time.

QUESTIONS.

1. How was Wilmington captured? Tell the story of the capture of Harnett and Ashe. What became of them?
2. What orders did Cornwallis receive at Wilmington?
3. What did General Lillington do to oppose Cornwallis?

4. Tell how Halifax was occupied by the British.
5. Tell how Tarleton was defeated at Halifax?
6. Where did Cornwallis go from Halifax?
7. What did he do in Virginia?
8. Who was elected governor in June?

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

PARTISAN CONFLICTS.

Strife in Anson County.—Through the influence of Major Craig at Wilmington the Tories in the southeastern portion of the State rose in arms about the first of March, 1781, and waged a bitter warfare upon the Whig inhabitants of that section. Anson County was the scene of many minor conflicts in which the Tories had the advantage. The patriots were driven out and fled in alarm to the settlements on the Neuse River, where the Whigs were in the majority.

Battle of Piney Bottom.—In May, the same year, after Cornwallis had retreated from the State, Colonel Thomas Wade, leader of the Anson County exiles on the Neuse, thought that he might take his people home with safety. Accordingly he gathered them together, and led them through Cumberland County; but at Piney Bottom he was attacked by a superior force of Tories and defeated, the greater part of his little band being dispersed.

David Fanning.—About the first of June, 1781, David Fanning, a notorious Tory bandit of Chatham County, upon the invitation of Major Craig, went to Wilmington, and while there was appointed Lieutenant-Colonel of all the Tory forces in the middle counties of the State. He was given

a British commision and sent back to Chatham County to embody the Tories and bring war upon his neighbors. For several months he was a terror to the Whig inhabitants of Chatham and Orange counties. On July 16th, while a court-martial was in session at Chatham Courthouse, he suddenly burst into the court room, and, at the head of forty daring men, demanded the surrender of the entire court. Before resistance could be made, the judge, lawyers, and jury were all made prisoners, and hurried off to Wilmington, and thrown into prison.

Attack on Alston's House.—There was one man in Chatham County whom Fanning feared and hated. This man was Colonel Philip Alston, who, at the head of the Whig forces of the county, had beaten the Tory leader in several conflicts. Fanning wanted to get hold of Alston and watched for an opportunity to do so. Near the first of August, 1781, that opportunity came, for he heard that Alston, with a small band of followers, was resting a few days at his home. Fanning resolved at once to attack him, and, taking twenty-four of his most resolute men, set out for Alston's house, where when it was learned that Fanning was coming there was no little excitement. Mrs. Alston hurriedly put the children up the brick chimney and jumped into the bed herself, covering up head and ears. Colonel Alston and his men shot from the windows and doors, while Fanning and his troopers hid behind fences and trees, and fired at the men in the house. The fight was kept up until

late in the day, and it seemed that Alston would be successful in beating off his assailants, for several of the party had been slain but no one in the house had been hurt. Fanning tried several times to take the house by assault, but was each time beaten off by the shower of bullets that were raining around them. Finally, in the afternoon Fanning thought of a cunning device. Taking an ox-cart that was standing in the barn-yard, he filled it with hay, and, pushing it ahead of his men, advanced to the house for the purpose of setting fire to it. In that way, it was seen, they could reach the house, for the men behind the cart would be protected from the bullets. Alston saw that it was useless to contend any longer, so Mrs. Alston went out to make terms with the enemy. She, by threatening to continue the fight to the last extremity, succeeded in getting Fanning to spare the lives of all. The brave little band of defenders marched out of the house with the honors of war. Fanning was thus defeated in his desire to take vengeance upon Colonel Alston.

Battle of McFalls Mill.—On September 1, 1781, Colonel Thomas Wade, with a force of six hundred men, was stationed at McFalls Mill, in Randolph County. Here he was attacked by a force of three hundred Tories under Fanning and Hector McNeil and, after a short conflict, was driven by a flank movement in headlong rout from the field. The Whig forces were pursued for miles by the victorious Tories and many were either killed or captured.

Capture of Hillsboro.—The Tories, flushed with victory, marched upon Hillsboro, then the capital of North Carolina. On account of some dissensions in the patriot ranks, at that time, there was no force to defend the town. So Fanning and his men rode in and took possession of the place. Governor Burke, after a gallant defense at his house, with the other State officers fell into the hands of the enemy, who plundered the town, and, with their prisoners and booty, set out for Wilmington. This daring raid occurred on September 13th, and was the most notable achievement of the Tory forces in the State.

Battle of Cane Creek.—As Fanning and McNeil, next day, were leading their victorious troops, with their prisoners, toward Wilmington, they found their way blocked at Lindley's Mill, on Cane Creek, in Chatham County, by a force of three hundred patriots under General John Butler. The Tories made an attack with their usual vigor, but were driven back by the murderous fire of the Whigs. Again and again the Tories charged, but each time were beaten back. Fanning, seeing that it was impossible to dislodge Butler by a direct attack, crossed the Creek lower down and assaulted his line in the rear. This movement was heroically met by Major Robert Mebane and repelled. By this time, however, the ammunition of the patriots gave out and they were obliged to retreat. This they did in good order unpursued by the Tories, who continued on their way to Wilmington. The losses in this engagement were

about sixty-five Tories killed and wounded and about thirty-five Whigs.

Alexander Martin Governor.—Immediately upon the capture of Governor Burke, Alexander Martin, of Guilford County, by virtue of his office as speaker, became governor, and served until Burke made his escape the following year.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Where is Anson County? The Neuse River?
2. Where is Chatham County? Randolph County?
3. Why did many Whigs leave Anson County?
4. Tell what happened on their way back home.
5. Who was David Fanning? Tell something of his exploits.
6. Whom did Fanning fear and hate?
7. Give particulars of the attack on Alston's house.
8. Give an account of the battle of McFalls Mill.
9. Tell the story of the capture of Hillsboro.
10. Give particulars of the battle of Cane Creek and the losses.
11. Who succeeded Governor Burke? Why?

CHAPTER XXXIX.

BATTLE OF ELIZABETHTOWN.

British Outpost in Bladen.—Early in the summer of 1781, the British established a military outpost at Elizabethtown in Bladen County. Colonel John Slingsby, a British resident of Wilmington, was put in command of it. The object of the post was to encourage the Tories and organize them against the potriots. Slingsby took charge and garrisoned the town with Tories and extended urgent invitations to all friends of the king to join him. He soon found himself at the head of a considerable body of men. These were equipped and sent out in detachments to wage war upon the Whig residents of the county. The majority of the people of Bladen were Scotch Highlanders, and, therefore, Tories. The few Whigs there were beaten in several engagements of an unimportant nature and forced to flee from the county. They took refuge in Duplin and Sampson Counties, and waited for a good opportunity to return to their homes.

The Resolution of the Exiles—Toward the last of September, 1781, about sixty of the exiled patriots met in Duplin County and resolved that they would return to Bladen and drive the Tories from

power. Colonel Thomas Brown, one of their number, was chosen leader, and he set to work to get the little band in marching and fighting condition. They decided to attack the Tories at Elizabethtown, and, if successful there to drive them from the county. After a march of fifty miles the little band of patriots came to the Cape Fear River opposite Elizabethtown at night. There they found that every boat had been removed from that side of the river, and there was no way to cross except by fording. Not to be daunted, however, they tied their guns, clothes and ammunition on their heads and plunged in. Reaching the other side in safety, in a solid column ascended the high bluff and marched toward the town.

Attack upon the Pickets.—Arriving on the outskirts of the village, the patriots found their progress stopped by the pickets that Slingsby had thrown out. Without halting the Whigs charged upon the Tory line and soon had them fleeing in alarm toward the town. The patriots followed in close pursuit and suddenly came upon the main garrison of three hundred men under the immediate command of Colonel Slingsby. The Whigs did not slacken their pace, but ran into the Tories an soon threw them into confusion. Colonel Slingsby rallied them after awhile and withstood the attack, holding his ground. Colonel Brown saw that his little army would soon be overwhelmed unless he could deceive the enemy as to his numbers. Telling his officers his plan, he

took his position in the center of the command, and in a loud voice gave his orders:

"On the right! Captain Todd's Company advance!" There was no such officer and company present, but the main body of the Whigs advanced and fired into the Tories. Then wheeling to the left awaited orders.

Again loud and distinct rang out the command, "On the left! Captain Gillespie's company, advance!" As before there was no such company, but the same sixty patriots advanced and fired and retired to the right.

Once again the command was given. "On the right! Captain Dickinson's company, advance!" The same tactics as before. This deception was kept up for some time until it appeared to the astonished Tories that Brown had about one thousand men under his command. Thinking themselves greatly outnumbered, therefore, they broke and fled, hotly pursued by the patriots.

Tory Hole.—Many of the Tories in their flight took refuge in the houses of the town, but the greater portion, in the darkness, ran pell-mell into a large ravine, since called Tory Hole. There they were fired upon by the victorious Whigs and a fearful slaughter ensued. The patriots took possession of the town, but did not attempt to hold it, as the county was full of Tories and their own numbers were too small. So with their wounded and prisoners the little band of patriots recrossed the river, and waited for another opportunity to strike the Tories a blow. The battle of

Elizabethtown broke forever the power of the Tories in that portion of the State. Colonel Slingsby, Major Gadden and others of their leaders were killed and the British outpost in Bladen County broken up. Most of the Tories in that county fled to the British at Wilmington and left the Whigs in quiet possession.

QUESTIONS.

1. When and where was a British outpost established?
2. Who was put in command? What was the object?
3. Where did the Whigs of the county go?
4. What resolution did sixty of them make?
5. Who was chosen leader?
6. What place did they decide to attack?
7. How did they cross the river?
8. What did they do on the other side?
9. How many men did the Tories have?
10. Tell how the Whigs first made the attack?
11. What strategy did Colonel Brown use? What is Tory Hole?
12. What was the effect of this battle?

CHAPTER XL.

CLOSE OF THE REVOLUTION.

Expedition Against Newbern.—About the middle of August, 1781, Major Craig set out from Wilmington with a force of four hundred British regulars and about as many Tories, upon a plundering expedition against Newbern. They met with no opposition, for the small force of patriots then in arms in the State was watching the movements of David Fanning and his bandits, the larger part of the militia being with General Greene in South Carolina. Arriving at Newbern, Craig and his raiders entered and plundered the town of whatever valuables they could find, and proceeded to Snow Hill ravaging the country as they went. At the latter place they heard of the approach of General Anthony Wayne, who, with eleven hundred American troops, was on his way to South Carolina to aid General Greene in his campaign against the British in that State. Craig, at once upon the receipt of this news, hastily retreated to Wilmington and shut hemself up behind his fortifications.

Murder of Doctor Gaston.—About the last of August, during the raid upon Newbern and Snow Hill, a party of Tories rode into the former place in search of patriots with a view of carrying them

as prisoners to Wilmington and holding them for ransom. They were especially anxious to sieze Dr. Alexander Gaston, because he was one of the most active patriots in that part of the State. When it became known that the Tories had entered the town, Dr. Gaston, as other patriots were doing, tried to escape, for there were no troops to oppose the enemy. Knowing that the Tories would soon be after him, Dr. Gaston, Mrs. Gaston and the children hurried to the wharf to escape by boat. The Tories came rapidly down to the river and reached it before Dr. Gaston got the boat off. Coming up the leader of the band ordered Gaston to surrender and, upon his refusal to do so he leveled his gun at him over the head of Mrs. Gaston, who was standing on the shore and fired, killing him almost instantly.

Rutherford Plans to Attack Wilmington.—General Griffith Rutherford, who had been taken prisoner at the battle of Camden, as related in a former chapter, after a year of close confinement at St. Augustine, Fla., was exchanged about the last of August, 1781, and returned to the State. At once he resumed his old position as leader of the militia of Mecklenburg, Rowan, Cabarrus and neighboring counties. Soon he was at the head of fourteen hundred resolute men, whose purpose was to drive Craig and his hated minions from Wilmington. With that object in view Rutherford set out from Charlotte about the first of October.

Victories Over the Tories.—In this army of pat-

riots there were three hundred and fifty mounted men under the immediate command of Colonel Robert Smith and Major Joseph Graham, both of Mecklenburg County. These were sent out in advance of the main body, and on October 15th, came upon the Tories at Rockfish Creek in Cumberland County. A considerable body of them had collected there under the younger Hector McNeil. Major Graham and his dragoons charged and dispersed the enemy, pursuing them to the swamps. A day or two afterward another Tory force was encountered at Raft Swamp in Robeson County and routed with a loss of sixteen killed and fifty wounded. These two defeats completely broke the spirits of the Tories and many of them fled for protection to the British fortifications around Wilmington.

Rutherford Besieges Wilmington.—On October 23rd General Rutherford arrived in the neighborhood of Wilmington and proceeded to lay seige to the place. He sent Colonel Smith with the cavalry to the south side of the Cape Fear to cut off from that direction any supplies that might be intended for the British, while he with the main body crossed at Waddell's Ferry and began to invest the town on the north.

Graham Defeats the South Carolina Tories.—By the direction of General Rutherford, Major Graham with ninety mounted men advanced to the South Carolina line in order to cut off a provision train sent the British from Lockwood's Folly on Shallot River. Reaching Seven Creeks

he encamped for the night. Here he was violently attacked about midnight by a force of South Carolina Tories under Major Gainey. Graham was taken somewhat by surprise, and his men, at first, were thrown into confusion. They rallied however, and with sword in hand beat off their assailants with severe loss. Graham lost one man killed and three wounded in this affair.

Capture of Wilmington.—Near the first of NovemberColonel Harry Lee arrived at the camp of Rutherford, with the news that Cornwallis had surrendered to General Washington at Yorktown, Va., on the nineteenth of October. This information caused great rejoicing among the patriots. Encouraged by that news, General Rutherford moved his forces forward to attack Craig in his fortifications. As he neared the town the entire British garrison took ship and sailed away leaving everything to the victorious Americans. Rutherford took possession on November 18th. Thus the last vestige of the British power in North Carolina was gone forever. The Mecklenburg Declaration and the Halifax Resolutions were at last made good, and North Carolina was an independent State.

The Old Log Rocker Method of Extracting Gold from Ore at Gold Hill, Rowan County, N. C.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Where is Snow Hill? Raft Swamp?
2. Why was there no opposition to Craig in his raid on Newbern?
3. What did the raiders do at Newbern? Why did they retreat?
4. Why were the Tories anxious to capture Dr. Gaston?
5. Give particulars of Dr. Gaston's death.
6. When and how did General Rutherford return to the State?
7. What did he plan to do soon after his return?
8. Who commanded the cavalry in his army?
9. Where did he defeat the Tories?
10. Where was Colonel Smith sent to?
11. Give particulars of Graham's exploit.
12. What joyous news did Colonel Lee bring?
13. Give particulars of the occupancy of Wilmington by Rutherford.

CHAPTER XLI.

THE CALM AFTER THE STORM.

Tidings of Peace.—The surrender of Cornwallis at Yorktown and the expulsion of Craig from Wilmington brought relief to the war-worn and exhausted people of North Carolina. The war was practically over, for the British made no further effort to continue the strife, and the independence of the colonies was assured. In September, 1783, a treaty of peace, between England and the United Colonies, was signed, by which the British king gave up all authority over the American States, and recognized them as free and independent. The tidings of this treaty produced great joy throughout America.

The Problem of the Tories.—Many difficult questions now troubled the patriots in settling up affairs after the close of the war. Chief among them was the problem of how to treat the Tories. Hundreds of these people had fled from the State, but now that peace had come they wished to return and live among the people they had tried to destroy. The great majority of the Whigs were opposed to this, but as the treaty of peace gave the Tories the right to return, they were allowed to do so. The murderers among them were given to understand that their presence would not be

tolerated, and they went elsewhere. David Fanning and his bandits tried to make terms with the authorities, and remain in North Carolina, but Governor Martin refused to enter into any agreement with them. Instead of that he ordered Fanning to surrender to the State authorities. He refused, however, to obey and managed to keep out of the way of the officers who were seeking him. Many of his followers, however, were captured and hanged. Because of that, Fanning and his band of blood-thirsty Tories fell upon some peaceful inhabitants of Randolph County and killed a score or more before he could be checked. After committing many such acts of violence and cruelty, he escaped to Canada where he spent the remainder of his life.

Other Tories.—Those who fought for the king in a fair and honorable way were allowed to return to their homes and enjoy all the rights of free men. The Highlanders of the Cape Fear section accepted the result in good faith, and laid down their arms for the pursuits of peace. They were respected by the Whigs, and the two joined in developing the young State. To show still further that the war had ended indeed, the Legislature extended, in 1783, a general pardon to all Tories, with the exception of David Fanning and several other bandits, who were known to be guilty of some of the most shocking crimes.

Rewarding the Soldiers.—To express its appreciation of the distinguished services of General Greene, in the war just closed, the State granted

him twenty-five thousand acres of land in Tennessee, then a part of North Carolina. Every private soldier also that had served in the defense of the State was given six hundred and forty acres in the same section. The officers, both of the continentals and the militia, were rewarded in a similar way according to rank and services. In consequence of this distribution of the land in Tennessee among the soldiers, a considerable emigration to that territory took place, which circumstance helped to make the present State of Tennessee.

Bills of Credit.—The Legislature of 1783 issued bills of credit to the value of five hundred thousand dollars. This was done to pay off the indebtedness of the State and to meet current expenses.

Return of the Soldiers.—Toward the close of 1782, after peace had been assured, the army, both in the north and south, was disbanded and the soldiers returned to their homes. North Carolina had at the time about ten thousand in the field, and these returned to assist in repairing the ravages of the war and to build up their wasted fortunes.

QUESTIONS.

1. When was peace made?
2. How were the tidings received in America?
3. What difficult problem now came up?
4. How did the majority of Whigs stand on the question?

5. What Tories were not allowed to return?
6. What did David Fanning try to do?
7. Why did he murder some people in Randolph County?
8. Where did he go when he left the State?
9. What is said of the Highlanders?
10. What favor did the Legislature of 1783 extend theTories?
11. Who were excluded from the pardon?
12. How were the soldiers rewarded?
13. To what did that lead?
14. For what were bills of credit issued?
15. When were the armies disbanded?

CHAPTER XLII.

THE STATE OF FRANKLIN.

Western Counties Ceded to General Congress.—In June, 1784, the Legislature, then in session at Newbern, ceded to the Continental Congress at Philadelphia twenty-nine million acres of land lying west of the Great Smoky mountains, and including the present State of Tennessee. This was done to aid congress in paying off the war debt. The backwoodsmen living in the ceded district were greatly displeased at this action of the Legislature, and declared they would not submit to being traded off in such a way. They asserted their purpose to resist any attempt at forcing them to live under the authority of the Continental Congress. The five western counties of Washington, Greene, Sullivan, Davidson and Hawkins met in September in convention at Jonesboro and declared their independence of North Carolina, and proceeded to organize a State government of their own. Without completing the organization, however, they adjourned to meet again the following year in Greenville to finish their work.

Who the Backwoodsmen Were.—Those counties had been settled by hunters and trappers, who, like Daniel Boone, wanted "elbow room," and had gone from Virginia and eastern and central North

Carolina looking for better hunting grounds. They were a hardy and patriotic people, and had made up a large part of that band of heroic mountaineers who defeated Ferguson at Kings Mountain. Colonel John Sevier, who was one of the leaders in that battle, was the best known man among them.

Sevier Elected Governor.—The next year, 1785, delegates from the five revolted counties met at Greenville, and, adopted a State constitution and elected John Sevier governor. They named the new State "Franklin" in honor of Benjamin Franklin, a patriotic statesman of Philadelphia.

Money in the New State.—There were no gold or silver coins in the new State, so the Convention was forced to adopt something else for money in order that trade might be carried on. It was decided that the skins of certain animals should pass as money. One raccoon skin was valued at one shilling and three pence, and would pass for that amount anywhere in the State. One beaver skin was valued at six shillings, as were also one deer or one otter skin. This medium of exchange was very suitable, and directly in the line of business of most of the people.

Strife in "Franklin".—When it became known in North Carolina that Sevier and his followers had established a separate government in the western counties, Governor Caswell, who was now serving his second term, sent a message to Colonel Sevier telling him to cease his treasonable conduct, or the army of North Carolina would be

sent against him. Sevier paid no attention to this message. Colonel John Tipton, one of the hardy settlers on the Tennessee, was opposed to the new State, and, under orders from Governor Caswell, organized a company of soldiers to resist Governor Sevier. Tipton, being armed with a Colonel's commission, declared his intention of breaking up Sevier's government. Colonel Sevier took up arms to overthrow the power of Tipton, and the two went in search of one another. Thus there was a condition of civil strife in the State of "Franklin."

Attacks and Counter Attacks.—Colonel Tipton, with his company, marched to Jonesboro one day where court was being held under the authority of the State of Franklin, and going into the court room, seized the court records, and turned the judge and jury into the street. When Colonel Sevier heard of the outrage he collected his troops and went in search of Colonel Tipton. Arriving at Tipton's house, Sevier burst open the doors took the captured records, and carried them off in triumph. Tipton was absent, and so escaped possible capture. Shortly afterwards Colonel Tipton attacked Colonel Sevier's house in the latter's absence, broke in, seized the court records and again carried them away. Sevier, however, was equal to the occasion, and hastened to recapture them, and hid them in a cave. And so the war went on. It was a conflict in which one side or the other was always absent when the other attacked and no blood was shed.

Capture of Colonel Sevier.—After this strife had gone on for three or four years, Colonel Sevier was captured in 1788, and carried to Morganton for trial. There he was put in prison, and finally put on trial for treason against the State of North Carolina. While the trial was proceeding he was rescued by a number of his followers, who daringly burst into the court room, and, to the astonishment of the assembled crowd, seized the prisoner, hurried him out of the courthouse, put him on a horse brought for this purpose, and carried him back to his home. On account of the distinguished services of Colonel Sevier in the Revolutionary war, he was allowed to go free and no further attempt was ever made to re-arrest him. With his capture, however, the State of Franklin collapsed. North Carolina again took charge and the rebellion was at an end. The Continental Congress soon afterward accepted the gift, and the five western counties were organized into the territory of Tennessee. In 1796 Tennessee was admitted to the union as a State and John Sevier was elected the first governor.

QUESTIONS.

1. What cession did the Legislature make in 1784?
2. Why was it made?
3. Why did the backwoodsmen rebel?
4. What did they do?
5. Who were the backwoodsmen?

6. Who was the chief man among them?
7. Who was elected governor?
8. What was the name of the new State?
9. What money expedient was used?
10. What was the value of a raccoon skin? A beaver skin?
11. Why was that kind of money convenient?
12. What did Governor Caswell do when he heard of the revolt?
13. Who opposed Sevier in the new State?
14. Give some account of the strife between the two.
15. When was Colonel Sevier captured?
16. Tell about his trial and escape.
17. Why did the State of Franklin fall?
18. Who was the first governor of Tennessee?

CHAPTER XLIII.

NORTH CAROLINA JOINS THE UNION.

The Question of Government.—After the close of the Revolution, people in North Carolina began seriously to consider what relation they should sustain toward the people of the other States of the Confederation. It was a question whether the State should be independent in government or join with other States in a union or federation. The "original thirteen States," of which North Carolina was one, were now thirteen separate governments, each independent of the others, except that they were loosly united under the Articles of Confederation adopted in 1776.

Why the States were Bound Together.—While the war was going on, the States were bound together by questions of common interests; for then there was an enemy in their midst. But when the enemy had been driven out, there was no longer any reason for the States to act together. There was, it was true, a congress to which all the States were expected to send delegates. This congress, called the Continental Congress, usually met in Philadelphia, and had a fixed number of delegates from each State, who attended the sessions regularly during the war, but later became indifferent and stayed at home.

A Closer Union Desired.—In a few years it be-

came evident that a closer union of the States and a stronger central government were desirable; for many disputes between the people of one State and those of another were springing up with no courts to settle them. Virginia and Maryland were quarreling over questions of navigation. New Jersey had levied a tax upon the people of New York for the privilege of trading in her territory. Other States were displeased with one another because of real or fancied wrongs. There had no way been provided for settling these disputes, and the outlook for continued peace was gloomy. People in all the States, therefore, began to think it would be best to have a strong central government to settle all such matters.

How People were Divided in North Carolina.—People in North Carolina were divided upon this question. Many were in favor of uniting all the States together into one nation with a president and congress to govern. These were called Federalists and embraced within their ranks a large part of the population. By far the larger number, however, wanted the State to remain independent, but thought it desirable to have a stronger bond of union between the States than was then existing. These were called Anti-Federalists or States Rights advocates. Willie Jones, of Halifax, Samuel Spencer, of Anson, Thomas Person, of Granville, Nathaniel Macon, of Warren, Timothy Bloodworth, of New Hanover, David Caldwell, of Guilford and Joseph McDowell, of Burke, were the ablest advocates of States Rights.

Delegates to Philadelphia.—In November, 1786, a convention of all the States was called to meet in Philadelphia in May of the following year. North Carolina chose six of her ablest statesmen to represent the State in that convention, namely, Richard Caswell, Hugh Williamson, William R. Davie, Alexander Martin, Willie Jones and Richard Dobbs Spaight. Caswell was governor of the State at that time and declined to serve, William Blount being put in his place. Willie Jones also refused to serve. The other five went to Philadelphia and assisted in framing the constitution of the United States.

The Federalists.—Although there were many glaring defects in the constitution as framed and many objectionable features in it, there were many people in the State in favor of adopting it in precisely the very form in which it was passed by the convention. Among these the ablest and best known were Samuel Johnston, James Iredell, William R. Davie, Richard Dobbs Spaight and Archibald Maclain. These men admitted that there were defects in the constitution, but they argued that it was best to adopt it and endeavor afterwards to improve it.

Convention at Hillsboro.—In the summer of 1788 the convention to consider the question of adopting the new constitution was called to meet at Hillsboro. Samuel Johnston, who was governor at the time, was elected chairman. Soon it was seen that the Anti-Federalists were in the majority. Willie Jones was the leader of the

party, and had matters largely in his own hands. Thomas Person, Samuel Spencer, Timothy Bloodworth, Joseph McDowell and David Caldwell were also members of the convention and gave their influence against the adoption of the constitution. The motion to adopt was lost by a vote of 184 to 84. Thus North Carolina refused to enter the union at that time, because the majority of her people were afraid to give so much powed to a central government as the new constitution seemed to convey.

Death of Richard Caswell.—Richard Caswell's term of office as governor expired in 1787. He was not allowed, howeer, to remain in private life, for he was elected to the senate from Onslow County in 1789, and took his seat in November of that year in Fayetteville. Three days after the Assembly met Governor Caswell was stricken with paralysis and died shortly thereafter.

The Constitution Adopted.—In November, 1789, another convention to consider the adoption of the Constitution of the United States met at Fayetteville. This time there was not much opposition, for a sufficient number of the States had already ratified the constitution and the new government had already gone into operation. Amendments had also been agreed on and a bill of rights drawn up which guaranteed the rights of the States. When, therefore, the vote was taken the constitution was ratified by a vote of 194 to 77. Thus North Carolina became one of the sisterhood of States about eight months after George Washing-

ton became the first president of the United States.

QUESTIONS.

1. What question was before the people after the Revolution?
2. How were the States bound together?
3. Why were members of congress careless about attending the meetings?
4. What disputes arose between States?
5. How did North Carolina stand on the question of a central government?
6. Who were the Federalists? The Anti-Federalists?
7. Who were the leading men of each party?
8. Who were chosen as delegates to Philadelphia?
9. Where and when did the convention to consider the new constitution meet?
10. What party was in the majority?
11. Why was the constitution not adopted?
12. What distinguished man died in November, 1789?
13. When and how was the constitution adopted?
14. Why was there so little opposition this time?

GENERAL REVIEW OF THE PERIOD OF INDEPENDENCE AND NATIONALITY. 1776—1789.

STUDY OF PERSONS.

Answer the following questions with each of the names given: Who? What?

General Gage
Robert Cleveland
Flora McDonald
Francis Nash
General Clinton
Edward Buncombe
John Stuart
Jethro Sumner
General Rutherford
John Hamilton
Samuel Bryan
Lord Cornwallis
Richmond Pearson
Colonel Tarlton
Benjamin Cleveland
William R. Davie
William L. Davidson
Francis Locke
David Wilson
Joseph McDowel
Hugh Brevard
John Moore
George Graham
Patrick Ferguson
Isaac Shelby
John Sevier
Nathaniel Greene
Daniel Morgan
Andrew Pickens
Elizabeth Steele
Harry Lee
William Washington
Joseph Graham
James Craig
John Pyle
Mrs. Willie Mones
Thomas Burke
Thomas Wade
David Fanning
Philip Alston
Hector McNeil
Robert Mebane
Alexander Martin
Thomas Brown
Willie Jones
John Slingsby
John Tipton
Thomas Person

STUDY OF PLACES.

Tell where each of the following places is, and what was done there:

Moore Creek Bridge
Riddle Knob
Halifax
Ramseur's Mill
Hornet's Nest
McIntyre's
Gilbert Town
Sycamore Shoals
King's Mountain
Cowpens
Cowan's Ford
Torrence Tavern
Salisbury
Shallow Ford
Hillsboro
Hart's Mill
Guilford Courthouse
Witsell's Mill
Wilmington
Piney Bottom
McFall's Mill
Cane Creek
Elizabethtown
Tory Hole
Seven Creeks
Jonesboro
Morganton
Fayetteville

UNION AND DISUNION.

1789—1865.

CHAPTER XLIV.

BUILDING THE CAPITAL CITY.

A Shifting Seat of Government.—North Carolina had no permanent seat of government until 1792. Previous to that time several towns had had the honor, alternately, of being the home of the governor, and the place where the Legislature met. Edenton was the first to have the distinction, but Newbern soon afterward won the prize and held it for some years. Later, however, Bath, Halifax, Tarboro, Wilmington, Fayetteville and Hillsboro were honored in the same way. There was such rivalry between them that no one could tell one year where the capital would be the next.

A Permanent Capital Needed.—It was soon found out that a moving capital was not the best for the State; for while the seat of government was changing from place to place, many vaulable papers had gotten lost. Some of these lost papers contained rosters of the soldiers, and a record of the terms and supplies the State had furnished in the Revolution, and, because of that loss, North

Carolina has never received full credit for what she did in those dangerous times. For that reason, with others, people began to desire a permanent capital, where all the records could be safely kept.

The Site Chosen.—The question of locating the capital came up in the convention of 1788. After a lengthy discussion, during which the claims of the rival towns were presented, it was decided that the permanent capital should be located in Wake County, somewhere within ten miles of Isaac Hunter's farm. Wake County had been formed in 1770, and named in honor of Lady Tryon, wife of Governor Tryon, her maiden name being Wake. The Legislature of 1791, at Newbern, appointed nine commissioners to select the exact spot for the capital. At that same session a committee of five was appointed to build, on the spot selected by the commissioners, a State house at a cost not to exceed twenty thousand dollars. After some investigation the commissioners selected the farm of Joel Lane, at Wake Courthouse, and purchased from him one thousand acres of land at a cost of three thousand dollars.

State House Built.—Upon this site a State House was built of brick about the same shape and size as the one now standing, but of inferior construction. It was completed in 1793, and the State now had a permanent home for her officers and records.

The City of Raleigh.—Five Public squares were

laid off and named Union, Burke, Caswell, Nash and Moore. The State House was built upon Union Square, the central one; later the asylum for the Deaf, Dumb and Blind was built upon one and the Governor's mansion on another. People moved in, and soon what had been a forest became the capital city of North Carolina. The New town was called Raleigh in honor of Sir Walter Raleigh.

Beginning of the State University.—The State Constitution adopted at Halifax, in 1776, provided for the establishment of a University for higher education; but no steps were taken until 1789 for carrying out that provision. In the latter year, the Legislature passed an act creating the State University and providing for the erection of the necessary buildings. In accordance with that act, General William R. Davie, as Grand Master of Masons of North Carolina, laid the corner-stone of the East Building in 1793. In February, 1795, the institution was opened for the reception of students. Reverend David Kerr was the first President and, he, with Charles W. Harris, as assistant, began in a small way the work of the great school on February 13, 1795. Hinton James of Wilmington, was the first student to matriculate.

First Members of Congress.—Two Senators in the Congress of the United States were elected by the Legislature of 1789. These were Samuel Johnston and Benjamin Hawkins. In the elections of following year Hugh Williamson, John B. Ashe,

Timothy Bloodworth, John Steele, and John Sevier were chosen representatives of the State to the lower house of Congress.

Trouble With France.—In 1797 the United States became involved in a dispute with France. President Adams called upon the states to raise troops for the war that seemed sure. William R. Davie was appointed Major-General of Volunteers from North Carolina, but the difficulty was peacefully settled and the troops disbanded.

The Land Frauds.—It was discovered, in 1798, that many fraudulent grants of land had been made by James Glasgow, Secretary of State, with the intent to defraud the Revolutionary soldiers who had received grants of land in Tennessee. Glasgow was found guilty and dismissed from office. The name of the county of Glasgow that had been named in his honor was changed to Greene, in honor of the great general who succeeded in crippling Cornwallis at Guilford Courthouse, and sending him to defeat at Yorktown.

General Davie Elected Governor.—General William R. Davie was elected Governor in 1798, but he had not served out his term when he was appointed by President Adams as a special commissioner to France in 1799. Along with the other two commissioners he went to Paris, and was there received with every mark of honor.

Plot to Burn the Capitol.—In 1797 a plot to burn the State House was discovered. The plot was laid, it was believed, by those who were guilty of the land frauds, hoping that by burning the Capi-

tol, all the evidence of their guilt would be destroyed. Philip Terrall, a negro slave, was caught as he entered at night the room containing the records. He was tried, found guilty of burglary, and hanged.

QUESTIONS.

1. What towns had been honored with the seat of government before 1792?
2. Why is it better to have a permanent capital?
3. What papers had gotten lost?
4. Where was the site to be?
5. How was the exact spot selected?
6. What was the cost of the State House?
7. What did the land cost?
8. How was the city laid off?
9. In whose honor was the city named?
10. When was the law creating the State University passed?
11. When was the institution opened to students?
12. Who was the first to enter?
13. Who were the first Senators? The first Representatives?
14. How was William R. Davie honored in 1798 and 1799?
15. What land frauds were discovered? How dealt with?
16. What plot was discovered in 1797?

CHAPTER XLV.

THE SPIRIT OF DEVELOPMENT.

Discovery of Gold.—Previous to 1799 there were no gold mines worked in the United States. No one at that time dreamed of the abundance of gold ore lying undiscovered in many parts of the country. In the closing year of the eighteenth century, however, an incident occurred in Cabarrus County that led to extensive gold mining in North Carolina. One day, in the sumer of 1799, the children of Mr. John Reed, who lived on Meadow Creek, were playing near the creek. Conrad, the eldest son of Mr. Reed, saw in the water a shining stone about the size of a smoothing iron. He did not know what it was, but it pleased his fancy, so he carried the stone to the house. Mr. Reed, thinking it might be gold, carried it to a silversmith in Concord; but he, not supposing there was any gold in Cabarrus County, said that it was worthless. Mr. Reed carried the stone home, and it was used for three years by Mrs. Reed to put against the door to keep it open. Finally, in 1802, Mr. Reed took the stone to a silversmith in Fayetteville, and there he learned that it was gold. Mr. Reed sold the piece for three dollars and fifty cents, a very small price for that much gold.

The First Gold Mine.—Mr. Reed began to look

for other pieces of the precious metal, and found several very large nuggets, one of them weighing twenty-eight ounces. People, hearing of the discovery, began to search for gold. Mr. Reed sold part of his land to "prospectors," and soon there was much excitement over the new discovery. A mining company, consisting of Mr. Reed, Frederick Kisor, James Love, and Martin Phifer, was formed for working the mine, and in 1803 they began work in the first gold mine in North Carolina. That was long before the discovery of the rich mines in California, and for many years the mine on Meadow Creek in Cabarrus County was the richest in the United States.

The Cotton Gin.—Eli Whitney, a native of Connecticut, living in Georgia, had, several years before this time, invented the cotton gin. This invention had stimulated the production of cotton in the State, and in 1802 many of the Whitney gins were being used. That year the Legislature made an arrangement with Mr. Whitney, by which it was agreed that the State should control the sale and use of the machines in North Carolina, paying Mr. Whitney a royalty on those sold in the State. A tax, therefore, of two shillings and six pence was levied upon each saw of every machine in the State and was collected by the tax collectors as other taxes were.

Settlement With the Tuscarora Indians.—King Blunt and the remnant of the Tuscarora Indians lived on their reservation, the "Indian Woods" in

Bertie County, many years after the Indian War of 1711. Later, they became dissatisfied, left the State, and joined their kinsmen on the Great Lakes. Before leaving, they leased their lands to white settlers, who agreed to pay a stated yearly rental. In the collection of these rents there were often disputes between the Indian owners and the white tenants, and much trouble resulted. To guard against troubles of that kind, President Jefferson appointed General Davie to the position of Indian Commissioner for North Carolina, and empowered him to settle any disputes that might arise between the Indian landlords and the white tenants. Under the advice of General Davie the Indians proposed to sell out to the State. The Legislature of 1802 accepted this proposition, and an agreement was reached by which the State was to pay the Indian owners a stated amount each year until 1816, when the lands were to belong to the State of North Carolina. Then it was that the last trace of the Tuscaroras vanished from the State.

Law Pertaining to Slaves.—The Legislature of 1802 passed a very stringent law regarding negro uprisings, by which any slave found guilty of counseling or engaging in any rebellion or conspiracy against his master should be punished with death. This law was the result of some uprising among the slaves of Hertford and Washington counties, causing uneasiness and fear among the white people of the State. No lives were lost on account of these disturbances, but dangerous plots

were discovered among the negroes that might have led to fatal results.

QUESTIONS.

1. How was gold discovered in Cabarrus County?
2. Relate the experience of Mr. Reed with the gold nugget.
3. How was the first gold mining company organized?
4. How large a nugget was once found?
5. Who invented the cotton gin?
6. How did the State manage the introduction of the machines?
7. What was the cause of disputes between the Indian landlords and the white tenants?
8. Who was appointed to settle these disputes?
9. How was the matter finally settled?
10. What law pertaining to slaves was passed in 1802?
11. Why was the law necessary?

CHAPTER XLVI.

THE WAR OF 1812.

Ten Silent Years.—For ten years before 1812 the State hardly had a history. The people were prosperous and happy, and there were no political jars to disturb them. Nothing of importance occurred except the change in the manner of holding courts. In 1806 the practice of holding courts only at Edenton, Newbern, Wilmington, Halifax, Hillsboro, Fayetteville, Salisbury, and Morgantown, which had been the rule since 1776, was changed, so that court was held twice a year in each county in the State. Also the Superior Court Judges, acting as a Court of Appeals, were constituted a Court of Records, thus making the beginning of the Supreme Court.

The Sailors' War.—In 1812 the second war with England began. This has been called the "Sailors' War," and the "Second War of Independence." It was caused by the overbearing conduct of the British seamen, who had never been friendly with the Americans since they had been so badly beaten in the Revolution. Sometimes a large British vessel would fire a cannon ball across the bow of a small American ship, and then board her, pretending to be looking for British deserters. Once the British man-of-war "Leopard" fired upon the American

ship "Chesapeake," boarded her, and took off four American sailors under the pretense that they were deserters. Other American ships were treated the same way, until the American people said they would stand it no longer. The cry was, "Free trade and Sailors' Rights." War was declared against England in June, 1812, and the American "tars" went out to chastise the insolent Englishmen.

No Fighting in North Carolina.—North Carolina was practically free from the horrors of the war of 1812. All the fighting was done in other states and on the sea. While that was true, however, the people of North Carolina did not forget their countrymen, who were fighting the British in other places. Benjamin Hawkins, who was then governor, enrolled volunteers for the war and sent supplies for the army. He had Fort Johnston on the Cape Fear and Fort Macon near Beaufort garrisoned, and enrolled the militia of the State, holding them in readiness to march wherever needed at a moment's notice. Besides, many brave North Carolinians, desiring active service, volunteered and joined the army in the west. Among them was Captain William McRea, of Wilmington, who joined the army under General Scott, and was in the battle of Lundy's Lane. Major Benjamin Forsyth, another brave North Carolinian, was in the army that invaded Canada, and was killed in that campaign.

General Graham Against the Indians.—When the Creek Indians of Tennessee and Alabama rose

in arms to aid the British, General Andrew Jackson was sent against them. One thousand North Carolina troops under General Joseph Graham joined him and helped to reduce the red men to submission.

The Cherokees of Western North Carolina.—During the war it was feared that the Cherokees of Western North Carolina would join the British, but by the energy of Governor Hawkins they were held in check and kept on friendly trems. Once during the time Tecumseh, the great Indian chief of the Illinois Indians, came to the Cherokee country and tried to incite the braves to war, but the chief, Junaluska, was opposed to it and advised his people to remain on friendly terms with their white neighbors.

Threatened Invasion by the British.—In 1814 there was a great deal of excitement in eastern North Carolina over a threatened invasion by the British. Admiral Cochburn, of the British Navy, in the early part of that year, sailed into Hampton Roads, Va., and captured the town of Hampton. He then threatened to attack the towns in eastern North Carolina. In consequence there was considerable preparation made in Edenton, Newbern, Beaufort, and Wilmington to resist the attack. The militia was called out, cannon mounted, and runners stationed along the rivers to signal the coming of the enemy. Admiral Cochburn, however, did not carry out his threat, but attacked Washington city instead, burnt the Capitol and White House and sailed away in triumph. He

landed troops at Portsmouth, south of Hatteras, in North Carolina, but these were later withdrawn without making any further effort to prosecute the war.

QUESTIONS.

1. What changes were made in the courts in 1806?
2. What war began in 1812? What was the cause?
3. What was meant by "free trade and sailors' rights"?
4. When was war declared?
5. Where was the fighting done?
6. What part did North Carolina take in the war?
7. What forts were garrisoned?
8. Who was William McRae? Benjamin Forsyth?
9. Who was sent against the Indians?
10. How were the Cherokees kept on friendly terms?
11. Who was Junaluska?
12. What was the cause of the excitement in 1814?
13. What preparations were made?
14. Where were British troops landed in the State?

CHAPTER XLVII.

NORTH CAROLINA SEAMEN IN THE WAR OF 1812.

Johnson Blakely.—One of the bravest American tars in the war of 1812 was Johnson Blakely, of Wilmington. He was one of the most skillful officers in the United States Navy, and performed many valiant deeds on the high seas. Becoming a midshipman in 1800, Blakely had steadily worked his way up until, in 1814, he was put in command of the sloop-of-war "Wasp," carrying eighteen guns and manned by one hundred and sixty men.

Battle With the Reindeer.—In the sping of 1814 Blakely sailed from Portsmouth, New Hampshire, upon a cruise off the coast of England. On June 28th he came in sight of a British man-of-war (the Reindeer) and immediately offered battle. The "Reindeer" accepted the challenge, and, after firing several broadsides, came alongside the "Wasp," intending to board. Blakely and his men were ready, and every man that leaped aboard the "Wasp" was either killed or thrown into the sea. As the British hesitated, after repeated attempts Blakely at the head of his gallant seamen leaped upon the deck of the "Reindeer," and, in a hand to hand conflict, beat the enemy from their guns, and in a few minutes had them huddled together

in the forecastle. The "Reindeer" struck her colors, and Blakely took possession. Taking the prisoners on board the "Wasp," he had the "Reindeer" burnt at sea and sailed away.

Battle With the Avon.—In September, the same year, the "Wasp" came upon the British man-of-war "Avon" and immediately cleared ship for action. The two ships fired broadsides into one another for an hour, when the "Avon" struck her colors. Blakely ran up alongside and prepared to board, but just then several British war vessels appeared upon the scene, and the "Wasp" was compelled to flee, leaving the captured prize. One British vessel gave chase, but the "Wasp" was of superior speed and escaped.

Lost at Sea.—Blakely continued his brilliant career for several months, capturing and destroying many merchant vessels. One day he seized a British ship, manned her from his own crew, and sent her to the United States with despatches to the Secretary of War and messages to his friends in Wilmington. That was the last ever heard of him. It is probable that the "Wasp" founded at sea and was lost with all on board.

The State's Ward.—Captain Blakely left one child, a daughter named Udney, only a few months old. In 1816 the Legislature, in order to show its appreciation of the brilliant services of the gallant seaman, adopted his daughter as the ward of the State, and educated her at the public expense.

Otway Burns.—Captain Otway Burns, of Beaufort, was another brave and skillful sailor, who

fought in the war of 1812. At the time the war broke out he was on his way from Newbern to Portland, Maine, in command of a vessel loaded with tar. Reaching Portland, and hearing of the Declaration of War, he resolved to give up his business as a trader, and become a privateer. Accordingly he sold his ship, bought a larger one and equipped her for war. He named her the "Snap-Dragon," a very appropriate name; for she was one of the fastest sailing vessels in the United States Navy.

Cruise of the "Snap-Dragon."—Early in the year 1813 the "Snap-Dragon" (carrying five heavy guns fifty muskets, four blunderbusses, and being manned by a crew of one hundred men) sailed from Newbern upon a voyage of seven months. Upon this cruise Captain Burns captured many rich prizes and fought some bloody battles. Once in the summer of 1813, he attacked a British vessel of fourteen guns and was badly damaged in the fight. In the beginning of the battle the British poured in a hot fire of grape and canister, which riddled the sails of the "Snap-Dragon." Burns however, ran his vessel alongside the enemy and hoisted the red flag, which was the signal for boarding. The British met the attack bravely, beat off the boarders, and broke loose from the embrace of the "Snap-Dragon." Sailing off a little distance the British vessel turned her prow toward the Yankee boat to ram her. Burns was on the lookout for that and turned his boat so as to escape the blow; but he did not escape entirely.

for the shock of the collision caused the bowsprit and mast to fall with a crash into the sea. Fearing to contend at such close quarters, the British ship sailed away. The "Snap-Dragon" was too badly crippled to pursue, but had to make for the nearest port for repairs.

Burns Almost Caught.—Shortly afterward, having refitted, the "Snap-Dragon" came in sight of four large merchant vessels and bore down upon them. As he approached the ships Burns' quick eye saw that one of the merchant vessels was a British man-of-war in disguise, and too strong an enemy for his crew. So he gave them a few broadsides and turned to retreat. Then the British man-of-war ran up English colors and fired some heavy shots at the "Snap-Dragon," which Burns answered with some shots from his rear guns. The enemy pursued with full sail and was gaining on the Yankee ship; but Burns was at the helm and saw his chance. As the two were going at full speed, firing at each other as they went, Burns suddenly tacked and sailed by the Englishman at a distance of about three hundred yards, going in an opposite direction. The enemy fired a broadside as Burns passed, but just as the balls left the guns a huge wave hid the "Snap-Dragon" from view and the shots passed harmlessly over. Before the Englishman could tack and begin another pursuit the "Snap-Dragon" was away in the distance and soon lost to view.

Other Services.—Captain Burns continued his remarkable career on the sea for more than a year.

During that time he captured British vessels amounting in value to more than five hundred thousand dollars. Returning to Beaufort in 1814, he sold the booty he had captured and realized a nice little fortune. Some time afterward the "Snap-Dragon" was captured by the British and destroyed. Captain Burns, however, was not in command at the time, being detained at home on account of illness.

Close of the War.—Peace was made between England and the United States in December, 1814. England discontinued her practice of searching American ships, and acknowledged the freedom of American seamen. And so "Free trade and sailors' rights" was recognized by England.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who was Johnson Blakely?
2. What promotion did he gain?
3. Describe the "Wasp."
4. Give an account of the battle with the "Reindeer."
5. Give an account of the battle with the "Avon."
6. What became of Blakely?
7. How did the State show appreciation of his services?
8. Who was Otway Burns?
9. What did he do when war was declared?
10. What was the name of his ship? How manned?

11. Give an account of the battle with a large English ship.
12. What damage did the "Snap-Dragon" sustain?
13. How did the English ship escape?
14. Tell how Captain Burns got into a close place and how he got out.
15. What was the value of the British prizes captured by Burns?
16. What became of the "Snap-Dragon"?
17. What were the terms of peace?

CHAPTER XLVIII.

SECTIONAL DIFFERENCES.

Battle of New Orleans.—Two weeks after the treaty of peace between England and the United States had been signed, but before the news of the event had reached this country, the greatest battle of the war was fought at New Orleans, La. Sir Edward Pakenham, leader of the British forces, made an attack upon that place, which was defended by General Andrew Jackson with a few thousand militia. The British regulars, who had fought Napoleon in Europe, made three attempts on January 8, 1815, to capture Jackson's works; but were each time repulsed with severe loss, and at last retired in disorder from the field, leaving over two thousand of their dead and wounded behind. The Americans lost only six killed and seven wounded.

Andrew Jackson.—General Jackson, the hero of the battle of New Orleans, was born in Union County, North Carolina, March 15, 1767. He practiced law after the Revolution for some years at Salisbury, but later moved to Tennessee, where he became famous as an Indian fighter. During the war of 1812 he was active in destroying the power of the Creek Indians, who had joined the British. After the Indians had been subdued, he made

preparation to repel the threatened invasion of the Gulf States by the British, and resolved to drive the invaders back if they should attempt it. The hunters and trappers of the West responded to his call, and, with them, he won the brilliant victory at New Orleans. This signal triumph made him the popular hero of the day. He was universally praised and loved. His admirers called him "Old Hickory," a name which remained with him as long as he lived. Later he was elected President of the United States and served two terms.

Representation in the Legislature.—In 1816 there were sixty-two counties in the State. Each county had two representatives and the borough towns of Edenton, Newbern, Wilmington, Halifax, Fayetteville, Hillsboro, and Salisbury had one each. That basis of representation gave the eastern section greatly the advantage over the western, for there were more counties in the east than in the west. The western members sought to organize new counties out of the large territory of Rowan, Guilford, Mecklenburg, Buncombe, and other western counties. Some of the eastern counties were small and had a voting population of less than five hundred, while some of the larger western counties had over two thousand voters. Still, the large counties had the same number of members of the Legislature as the small ones. The western members claimed that such a basis was wrong, and that another basis (giving every county the strength it was entitled to according to population) should be adopted. The eastern members maintained

however, that the constitution of 1776 was good enough; and, as a rule, they resisted any proposition to organize a new county in the west unless there was one in the east to be formed at the same time.

Internal Improvements.—The strife was mainly caused by the question of internal improvements. The east was well supplied with highways of travel and trade on the navigable rivers and sounds, but the west was dependent upon the construction of roads. Several propositions were made in the Legislature to levy a special tax to build the roads that were needed. The west was in favor of such action, but the east almost as a unit opposed it. And so the strife went on until another constitution was adopted in 1835, which changed the basis of representation.

Organization of the Supreme Court.—In 1818 the Legislature by act organized a Supreme Court, whose officers should reside at Raleigh and try cases only that should be sent up to them on appeal from the Superior Courts. John L. Taylor was elected Chief Justice, and Leonard Henderson and John Hall were chosen Associate-Justices. This was the beginning of the real Supreme Court of North Carolina, and abolished the custom of the Superior Court judges meeting once a year to hear cases on appeal.

The Public Schools.—Although the Constitution of 1776 provided that a system of public schools should be established in every county in the State there was no step toward carrying out this provi-

sion until 1816. In that year, however, Archibald D. Murphy brought the matter to the attention of the Legislature and urged the organization of the schools at an early date. A committee was appointed to take the question under consideration Mr. Murphy was chairman of this committee and made an able report to the Legislature in 1817. No funds were found available, however, at that time, and nothing further was done until 1825. In the latter year Bartlett Yancey introduced a bill in the Legislature creating a "Literary Fund," the interest of which was to be used in the organization of the common schools.

Visit of Lafayette.—In 1825 General Lafayette, a brave French nobleman who fought in the American army in the Revolutionary War, came to America and visited many towns in the State. Everywhere he was received with the most distinguished honor.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Where is Union County? New Orleans? Buncombe County?
2. Where was the last battle of the war of 1812 fought?
3. Give an account of that event.
4. Where was Andrew Jackson born?
5. For what was he famous? What was he called?
6. How many counties were there in 1816?
7. Name the borough towns.

8. How many members of the Legislature were from each county?
9. Which section had the advantage?
10. What was the contention of the western members? The eastern?
11. What was the main question that caused the strife?
12. When was the Supreme Court organized?
13. Who were the first justices?
14. When was the first step taken toward the organization of the public schools?
15. Tell what Archibald Murphy and Bartlett Yancey did.
16. How was Lafayette received on his visit to North Carolina?

CHAPTER XLIV.

THE CONSTITUTION OF 1835.

The State House Burned.—In June, 1831, through the carelessness of a mechanic at work repairing the roof, the State House caught fire and was burned to the ground. Chief among the losses sustained in that fire was the destruction of the marble statue of George Washington, chiseled by Conova, the famous sculptor of Italy. For two or three years afterward the sessions of the Legislature were held in the Governor's Mansion. The town of Fayetteville made an effort to have the seat of government removed to that city, and made some tempting propositions; but they were rejected by the Legislature. Steps were at once taken to rebuild on the same spot, and to put up a larger and more magnificent structure.

The First Railroad in the State.—Railroads were unknown in this country until 1830. In that year a short line was run out from Charleston, South Carolina. In 1832 a short iron track, at the suggestion of Mrs. William Polk, was run from Raleigh to the quarry, whence the stone for the new State House was being hauled. In the same year the Legislature passed an act for the extension of a railroad from Portsmouth, Va., to Weldon, N. C. This was the beginning of railroad

building in the State and marks an epoch in the industrial development of the commonwealth.

The Railroad Convention.—The question of railroad building was a very important one in North Carolina at that time. Several propositions had been made as to the proper method of developing the State by that means. In order to give a chance for the expression of the many opinions on the question, a railroad convention was held in Raleigh in 1833. In this meeting many views were advanced, but two principal propositions were presented, one for building three lines of railroad running north and south across the State, and the other for building a trunk line east and west the entire length of the State. The former idea was strongly advocated by William A. Graham, while the latter was eloquently presented by Joseph A. Hill. The east and west idea was the more popular, and by a vote of the convention that proposition was adopted. It was a long time, however, before the idea was carried out.

Wilmington and Weldon Railroad.—In the same year the citizens of Wilmington, then a town of about two thousand inhabitants, met and raised, by subscription, a fund of four hundred thousand dollars for a railroad to be built from Wilmington to Raleigh. Later, this plan was changed and instead of running from Wilmington to Raleigh, it was made to strike the Petersburg and Porstmouth roads at Weldon. The Legislature of the following year granted a charter, and the work upon the road was begun. When completed it was one hun-

dred and sixty-two miles in length, for a number of years the longest railroad in the United States.

Constitutional Convention Called.—After a long and bitter debate, the Legislature of 1834 voted to submit to the people a call for a constitutional convention to meet in Raleigh the next year to take into consideration the question of amending the Halifax Constitution of 1776. This was a continuation of the long strife between the eastern and western counties. As was expected, the eastern members, almost as a whole, were opposed to the proposition, while the western members unanimously favored it. At the election by the people the call was carried by a small majority.

Meeting of the Convention.—On June 4, 1835, the great convention met in Raleigh and organized. It was composed of some of the ablest men in the State, the best known among them being Nathaniel Macon, David L. Swain, William Gaston, David Outlaw, John Owen, Louis D. Wilson, Richard Dobbs Spaight, John N. Morehead, John Branch, and Joseph Daniel. For presiding officer of the convention all eyes turned to Nathaniel Macon, of Warren County, and he was elected.

"Nat" Macon.—Nathaniel Macon was at that time seventy-eight years of age. Seven years before he had resigned his seat in the Senate of the United States on the ground that he was too old for service. He had served thirty-seven years in Congress, a portion of that time in the House of Representatives and the remainder in the Senate. For many years he was Speaker of the House and

a recognized leader. His associates looked upon him as the "wisest and best of men," and Thomas Jefferson spoke of him as the "Last of the Romans." It was this great and good man that was chosen as president of the convention.

Work of the Convention.—The convention was in session until July 11th, and made some very important and needful changes in the constitution. The following were the chief changes made: Borough towns abolished, representation in the House of Commons according to Federal population, membership of that branch to be limited to one hundred and twenty, each county that paid one-fiftieth of the State tax to have one Senator, smaller counties formed into senatorial districts, sessions of the Legislature to be every two years instead of every year, free negroes disfranchised, and the governor thereafter to be elected by the people for two years instead of annually by the Legislature, as had been done since 1776.

First Governor Under the New Constitution.—In the fall of that year the constitution as amended was submitted to the vote of the people and ratified by a majority of over five thousand. At the same election E. B. Dudley, candidate of the Whig party for governor, was elected over Richard Dobbs Spaight, candidate of the Democratic party. This was the first time that a governor had been elected by the people.

QUESTIONS.

1. How was the State House burned?
2. What was one of the chief losses?
3. Where did the Legislature meet for some year after this?
4. What town tried to get the capital?
5. Where was the first railroad built in America? In North Carolina?
6. Name some other railroads that were built or projected.
7. Where was a railroad convention held? For what purpose?
8. What propositions were presented? Which was adopted?
9. How was the Wilmington and Weldon Railroad begun?
10. How long is it?
11. Why was a Constitutional Convention called in 1835?
12. How did the eastern and the western sections of the State stand on the call?
13. Name some of the leaders in the convention.
14. Who was elected president of the convention?
15. Tell something of Nat Macon.
16. Give the principal changes made in the constitution of 1776.
17. Who was elected the first governor under the new constitution?
18. What two political parties were in the State at that time?

CHAPTER L.

THE CHEROKEE INDIANS AND THEIR RESERVATION.

Removal of the Tribe.—During the early years of the nineteenth century the Indians in the eastern part of the United States began to be restless and to look toward the land of the setting sun, whither so many of their people had already gone. The Federal government offered them lands in what is now the State of Oklahoma in exchange for their lands east of the Mississippi River. Many of the tribes accepted the offer and left their old hunting grounds for new ones in the West. The Cherokees of Georgia, Alabama, Tennessee, and North Carolina, by a treaty of 1816, were encouraged to remain in their homes; but later war broke out between the government and these Indians, resulting in much bloodshed and bringing considerable trouble upon the frontier settlements in those states. It was thought best, therefore, to remove the savages to a reservation in what afterward came to be known as the Indian Territory. They were allotted lands and given instructions to go to their new homes; but they clung to their native hills and refused to go. A part of the United States army under General Winfield Scott was sent to force a removal; and finally a large

number yielded, giving up their mountain homes for the prairies of the West.

The Eastern Band.—That part of the tribe that was living among the mountains of North Carolina refused utterly to go. When General Scott came they fled to the wildest parts of the mountains and hid themselves in the thickest rhododendrum marshes. Many of them were hunted down and taken by force. Many others secreted themselves in the mountain fastnesses and could not be found. Some even that were captured escaped from their captors far on the journey to the West and returned to their homes. Later, on account of their devotion to their native hills, the government allowed the remnant to remain. The State of North Carolina granted them a reservation in what is now Graham, Jackson, and Swain counties, upon which they have since lived. This remnant is called the Eastern Band of the Cherokees and now numbers about sixteen hundred.

Intemperance and Yonaguska.—Until 1830 the Cherokees were very intemperate in the use of alcoholic liquors. In that year, however, Yonaguska, or "Drawing Bear," became chief of the tribe in North Carolina and began some reforms. He was a sensible Indian, and saw that drunkenness among his people was their greatest fault. By some persuasion and coercion he succeeded in getting most of them to sign a pledge to quit the use of spirituous liquors. It was strictly kept. If an Indian broke the pledge he was publicly whipped and forced to take another pledge more binding

than the other. As a result there was very little drunkenness among them for many years, for the pledge was kept during the lifetime of Yonaguska.

A White Chief.—For many years before the beginning of the Civil war Colonel William H. Thomas was chief of the tribe. He was chosen by the Indians themselves at the advice of Yonaguska. Thomas had lived for many years among the Indians and was popular among them. He held the position until the breaking out of the Civil war, when he and many of the Indians joined the Confederate army, doing splendid service during that struggle. After the Civil war the United States government took the tribe more directly under its supervision. A splendid government school is now maintained on the reservation, and the Indian boys and girls are receiving a liberal education.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Where are Graham, Jackson, and Swain counties?
2. Why did many Indians move to the Indian Territory?
3. How were the others induced to go?
4. What is the Eastern Band? Why did they refuse to go west?
5. Why were they allowed to remain?
6. Where is their reservation?
7. What bad habit had the Indians?

8. Who became chief in 1830? What reform did he undertake?
9. How was one treated who broke the pledge?
10. Who was elected chief after Yonaguska?
11. How did he manage the Indian affairs?
12. What did he do in the Civil war? What has the government done for the Indians?

CHAPTER LI.

THE PUBLIC SCHOOLS AND INDUSTRIAL DEVELOPMENT.

Opening of the Public Schools.—Important legislation respecting the public schools was enacted in 1838. Each county was divided into districts, not over six miles square, and a school house ordered built near the centre of each district. The County Court was commissioned to select ten capable men to act as superintendents to manage the schools of their county. No State superintendent was provided for as yet, but the ten supervising officers in each county were expected to perform the duties not only of the superintendent but also of the county boards of education. The public schools opened under this law in 1840.

The Public School Fund.—Besides the "Literary Fund" that had been created in 1825, there were now several other sources of revenue for the schools. The United States government paid to the State one and a half million dollars as the proceeds of the sale of public lands. By act of the Legislature this fund was to be held in trust and the interest used in carrying on the schools. There were allotted also to the schools the State's dividends derived from bank stock and from the Cape Fear and the Roanoke Navigation Companies, as

well as the revenue derived from a tax on retailers of spirituous liquors and the keepers of taverns. The State swamp lands were likewise made a part of the assets of the public schools. It was estimated that the fund derived from these various sources would be sufficient to run the schools three or four months in each year.

Colleges Established.—The year 1838 was further notable in the educational life of the State in the establishment of two higher institutions of moved from the State in boyhood, or early man- General William L. Davidson, was built under the auspices of the Presbyterian Synod of North Carolina and opened for students that year. Wake Forest College, the Baptist school for boys, was chartered the same year, though it had been in existence as a high school since 1834. Dr. Robert H. Morrison was the first president of Davidson College, and Dr. Samuel Wait, of Wake Forest.

Great North Carolinians in Other States.—At this time many North Carolinians had risen to eminence in other States. Many of them had learning. Davidson College, named in honor of hood, and had won fame and fortune in their adopted homes. Among these were Andrew Jackson, who had moved to Tennessee in his young manhood, and had twice been chosen President of the United States; Thomas H. Benton, United States Senator from Missouri for twenty years; Spencer Jarnigan, United States Senator from Tennessee; William R. King, United States Senator from Alabama and afterward Vice-President

of the United States; Jesse Spaight, Senator from Mississippi; John Bragg, member of Congress from Alabama; John Branch, Governor of Florida; and James K. Polk, Speaker of the National House of Representatives and afterward President of the United States. There were others in the states North and West who were rising to honor and usefulness in their chosen vocations, some of them reaching national fame shortly afterward.

Gold Hill.—In 1842 a rich vein of gold was discovered on the land of Andrew Troutman in Rowan County. The mine was shortly thereafter developed and named Gold Hill. It was considered at that time very rich, yielding about one hundred thousand dollars in gold bars every year.

Annexation of Texas.—James K. Polk was elected President of the United States in 1844. At that time the entire country was excited over the possibility of a war with Mexico on account of the admission of Texas into the Union as a State. Texas had been a province of Mexico, but in 1836 revolted and set up an independent republic with Sam Houston as the first President. Mexico did not acknowledge the new government and sent an army into Texas to reduce the people to submission. A battle was fought at San Jacinto and the Mexican army routed. The Mexican government, however, never acknowledged the independence of the infant republic, and when the Congress of the United States admitted Texas as a State war became inevitable.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Where is Davidson College? Wake Forest College?
2. Where is Gold Hill?
3. When did the public schools begin work? How were they managed?
4. What fund was set aside for the support of the schools?
5. What other sources of revenue were there?
6. What was the length of the school term?
7. What colleges were established the same year?
8. Who were the first presidents of the colleges?
9. Name some of the great North Carolinians in other states at the time.
10. For what is Gold Hill noted?
11. What caused the Mexican war?

CHAPTER LII.

WAR WITH MEXICO.

North Carolina Soldiers for the War.—Although the war with Mexico was unpopular in North Carolina, the State furnished her full quota of troops for that struggle. Colonel Robert T. Paine, in command of the first regiment of volunteers, responded to the President's call for troops and hastened to the Rio Grande to Join General Taylor's army of occupation. Louis D. Wilson, of Edgecombe County, a private in the regiment, was at that time a member of the State Legislature. He at once resigned his seat at Raleigh, bade farewell to his associates, and set out with his company for the seat of war. Before reaching Mexico, Wilson was chosen Colonel of the twelfth regiment of infrantry; but he did not live to add glory to his name by heroic deeds on the battlefield. He was taken ill with fever and died in the midst of brilliant deeds of heroism performed by the American army near the City of Mexico. His memory, however, lives in the name of one of the State's best counties. Colonel Paine and his regiment did garrison duty throughout the war at Camargo. Other North Carolinians, among them Capt. J. H. K. Burgwyn, Major Samuel McRee, Capt. W. J. Clark and Junius B. Wheeler

enlisted in the regular army of the United States and performed signal service on the field of battle.

Captain Bragg.—Braxton Bragg was one of the bravest soldiers in General Taylor's army. He was born in Northampton County and educated in the school of the soldier at the West Point Military Academy. When the war with Mexico began he was captain of a company of volunteers in the regular army of the United States. He was conspicuous for gallantry at the capture of Fort Brow on the Rio Grande and promoted to the command of a battery of artillery. By his heroic conduct in battle, Bragg won the confidence of General Taylor.

Invasion of Mexico.—After the Mexicans had been beaten at Palo Alto and Reseca de la Palma and driven out of Texas, General Taylor crossed the Rio Grande and began his march to the City of Mexico. He took by storm the strongly fortified city of Monterey and set out upon his long journey to the Mexican capital, determined to end the war by dictating terms of peace in the palace of the Montezumas. Before he had gone far on the way, however, he received orders from President Polk to halt where he was and send the larger part of his army to reinforce General Scott in an attack upon Vera Cruz. General Taylor was indignant at the order, but he obeyed. He kept five thousand men and sent the main part of his army to General Scott. Captain Bragg remained with "Old Rough and Ready" as the soldiers affectionately called General Taylor.

Approach of Santa Anna.—After having sent away the bulk of his men, General Taylor posted himself at Buena Vista and waited for further orders. In a few days intelligence reached him that Santa Anna, the President of Mexico, with an army of twenty thousand men, was coming against him. Taylor was not alarmed, for he thought that his little army of five thousand men was a good match for Santa Anna and his host. The Mexican army came up within a few hundred yards and halted. Santa Anna sent a despatch to Taylor ordering him to surrender, but "Old Rough and Ready" answered that he would defend his position to the last.

Battle of Buena Vista.—As soon as he had received General Taylor's reply, Santa Anna ordered a charge upon the American works; but Taylor was ready and successfully repulsed the assault. Again the Mexicans charged the works and succeeded in breaking the lines at one point; but by the heroic stand of Jefferson Davis and his Mississippi regiment the Mexicans were beaten back. After repeated assaults on the American front without avail Santa Anna ordered a flank movement. Taylor saw the attempt and directed Captain Bragg to rush forward his artillery to check the advance. Bragg planted his battery within fifty yards of the advancing enemy and poured into their ranks a hot fire of grape and canister. Great gaps were made in the ranks of the Mexicans. General Taylor was watching Bragg with admiration, and cheered those around him by

pointing to the artillery-men and praising their heroic action. Riding near the battery he raised his hat and said, "Give them a little more grape, Captain Bragg." The order was obeyed and the Mexican lines were broken. Santa Anna lost about 2000 men in this battle while Taylor lost about 700. It was a complete victory for the Americans.

Close of the War.—The next year, 1848, the City of Mexico was captured by the American army under General Winfield Scott, and soon thereafter peace was made. Mexico yielded every point at issue, acknowledged the independence of Texas and ceded to the United States California, Arizona, New Mexico and a portion of Utah, the national government paying to Mexico fifteen million dollars for those vast districts. The success of the American arms was complete, and the supremacy of the Stars and Stripes on the western continent was established.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who was Colonel Robt. T Paine? Louis D. Wilson? What service did Paine render? Wilson?
2. Name other North Carolina heroes of the Mexican war.
3. Who was Braxton Bragg? How did he win promotion?
4. How did he win the confidence of General Taylor?

5. Why did General Taylor stop at Buena Vista?
6. How many men did Santa Anna have?
7. Who probably saved the American army from defeat?
8. What was Captain Bragg ordered to do?
9. How did Taylor show his appreciation of Bragg's effort? What were his words?
10. What were the losses on each side?
11. When was peace made? What were the terms of peace?
12. What did the war establish?

CHAPTER LIII.

PROGRESS OF PUBLIC INSTITUTIONS.

North Carolina Railroad.—Considerable excitement attended the session of the General Assembly of 1848. Early in the session a bill was introduced authorizing the Governor and State Treasurer to purchase stock to the value of two million dollars in the proposed railroad from Beaufort to Charlotte, afterward known as the North Carolina Railroad. After a protracted and bitter fight in both houses, during which much ill feeling was stirred up, the bill was passed and became a law. In the senate the vote on the measure was a tie, and the presiding officer, Calvin Graves, cast the deciding vote for the railroad. For this reason Mr. Graves was severely criticised by the people of his own county, Caswell, and was defeated for re-election.

Condition of the State's Insane.—At the same session a bill for establishing an asylum for the insane was introduced, but as many large appropriations had already been made it was feared that the bill could not be passed that year. Every member of the Legislature recognized the necessity of such an institution, for the indigent insane were being confined in jails without medical attention. It was a pitiable condition of affairs.

In 1848 Miss Dorothea Dix, of Massachusetts, came to Raleigh and delivered an address in which she urged better treatment of the insane. Miss Dix was an enthusiastic worker, and her stay in the capital city at the time the matter was under consideration was very fortunate.

How the Asylum Bill was Passed.—James C. Dobbin, of Fayetteville, was at that time one of the ablest men in the General Assembly. He opposed the asylum bill because of the low condition of the public finances. Mrs. Dobbin, although an invalid, was greatly interested in public matters and especially in the passage of the bill to relieve the insane. She became acquainted with Miss Dix and the two often talked over their plans for the success of the measure, but could not gain the assistance of Mr. Dobbin. As time passed Mrs. Dobbin's health gradually failed, and it was known that she was dying. Her interest in the asylum, however, continued to the last. Just before her death she asked Mr. Dobbin to promise her that he would support the bill when it came to a vote, and he, anxious to do anything in his power for her comfort, told her that he would. Those were almost her last words, for she shortly afterward died. Soon thereafter the bill came up for discussion, and Mr. Dobbin delivered an eloquent speech in favor of it, in which he told how his dying wife had begged him to vote for the measure and related her dying words. Nearly every member of the House wept as he was speaking, and when the vote was taken the

bill was passed almost unanimously. Thus the asylum was established by the efforts of one woman and the dying prayer of another.

First Superintendent of Public Instruction.—The public schools of the State had no official head until 1852 when Dr. Calvin H. Wiley, of Oxford, was chosen to the position of Superintendent of Public Instruction. Dr. Wiley found the educational interests in bad shape, but by untiring industry he brought the schools, in a few years, to a condition of great usefulness. He visited every section of the State and became acquainted with the conditions in every neighborhood. He also wrote the "North Carolina Reader," a book containing many beautiful and patriotic selections about North Carolina, all of which were intended to develop a more worthy State pride.

Mount Mitchell Discovered.—In the summer of 1857, Dr. Elisha Mitchell, professor of geology in the State University, lost his life while wandering among the Black Mountains of Yancey County in search of geographical truths. All of the geographies, published before 1857, had stated that Mount Washington in New Hampshire was the highest mountain east of the Mississippi River. Dr. Mitchell believed the statement to be an error, and by careful measurements proved that Black Dome in Yancey County is considerably higher than Mount Washington. About the same time Colonel T. L. Clingman, of Asheville, took the measurement of some mountains in the Great Smoky range, and asserted that there are moun-

tains in the State even higher than Black Dome. Dr. Mitchell was engaged in taking further measurements in the Black Mountains to prove that Clingman was mistaken when he lost his footing and was dashed to pieces at the bottom of a mountain gorge. His body was found a few days afterward by "Big Tom" Wilson, a mountaineer living near, and taken to Asheville where the funeral was held. The remains were afterwards burried on top of Black Dome which is now called Mount Mitchell in honor of the distinguished scientist who lost his life near its summit. It is the highest peak east of the Rocky Mountains. A monument to the memory of Dr. Mitchell has been erected on its top.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Where is Caswell County? Oxford? Yancey County?
2. Point out the Black Mountains; Black Dome; Asheville.
3. What railroad was proposed in 1848? How was the bill passed?
4. What other important question came up at the same session?
5. What was the condition of the indigent insane?
6. Who was Miss Dorothea Dix?
7. Why were the members of the Legislature opposed to the asylum?

8. Tell how Mr. Dobbin was induced to vote for the bill.
9. Who was the first Superintendent of Public Instruction?
10. How did Dr. Wiley improve the schools?
11. What book did he prepare?
12. How did Dr. Mitchell lose his life?
13. What did he prove?

CHAPTER LIV.

IN SLAVERY TIMES.

Introduction of Slavery.—Some Dutch traders in 1620, brought a shipload of negroes to Jamestown, Va., and sold them to the planters as slaves. This was the beginning of negro slavery in America. It was found that slavery was profitable, and others joined the Dutch in the slave trade. Soon all the colonies had slaves. They were brought into North Carolina as soon as the first permanent settlements were made, and in a short time slavery was one of the principal institutions of the colony. In later times some of the larger plantations had more than three hundred slaves.

Slave Dealers.—There were in those days men who dealt in slaves just as men deal in horses now, buying and selling for gain. Sometimes these slave dealers bought up a large number and drove them to other States to sell, and in that way made fortunes for themselves. This was done by men in the North as well as in the South.

How the Slaves were Treated.—Sometimes masters were cruel and treated their slaves brutally but that was unusual Negroes were worth from three hundred to two thousand dollars a piece, and it was, therefore, to the interest of their owners to take good care of them. Besides, the

majority of slave owners were kind, and treated their slaves as members of their own families. As for the slaves themselves they were happy and contented on the plantations. They were allowed all the freedom they seemed to want, and were given the privilege of visiting other plantations whenever they chose to do so. All that was requirred of them was to be in place when work time came. At the holiday season they were almost as free as their masters.

Corn Shuckings.—On a large plantation, times of fun and frolic were frequent. One great occasion was the corn shucking festival. This usually occurred at night in November, after the corn had been hauled from the fields. Long piles of corn in the shuck were made in the barnyard, and invitations sent to all the negroes on the neighboring plantations to come to the corn shucking. Often hundreds came, and as they shucked the corn, sang the plantation melodies, and told their rustic jokes.

The Log Rolling.—Another big occasion was the log rolling. This occurred generally in the spring of the year. The trees were cut down in the winter, cut into logs, and invitations issued in March to all the negroes around to come to the log rolling. Every one came, for it was plantation etiquette to do so. When all assembled, handspikes were given out and the men paired off according to strength. Then the log was rolled upon two or three handspikes lying flat on the ground. Each man grasped his end of the

handspike, and, at the word, up came the log to be borne away to the heap. Each man must carry his end, or be "pulled down," a disgrace all wanted to shun. It often happened that a champion was found who could "pull down" all his rivals and stand forth as the hero of the occasion. Then his admirers chanted his praises, and, when the log rolling was over, took him upon their shoulders and carried him about the field in triumph.

Relation of Master and Slave.—Those were good times in North Carolina and throughout the South. The master and his slaves were generally friends. The children of the two played together, and many an Uncle Remus told stories to white and black children around the kitchen fire. The black "mammy" was a person of great respectability on the plantation in those days.

Abolitionists of the North.—There were many people of the North who thought it wrong to own slaves, although years before their ancestors had sold slaves to the people of the South. They were called Abolitionists, because they wanted to abolish slavery. These people got control of many of the State governments in the North and passed laws called "Personal Liberty Laws," which induced many negroes to run away from their masters and escape to the North. Finally the Abolitionists, by electing Abraham Lincoln President, got control of the United States government and threatened to have slavery abolished throughout the South.

Indignation in the South.—Most people in

North Carolina were really opposed to slavery and were in favor of a gradual emancipation. Slavery was already in existence, however, through no fault of theirs. They had the slaves and had to manage as best they could the problem of what to do with them. Many slave owners were pursuing the policy of setting their slaves free, a few at a time, expecting that at no distant time all the slaves would be set free and sent to Africa. But when the Abolitionists began to speak and act so violently, the southern people became indignant and declared their purpose to defend their rights which the constitution of the United States guaranteed them, bluntly saying to the people of the North that the negro problem belong to the South and could best be settled by southern people.

QUESTIONS.

1. When was negro slavery introduced into North Carolina?
2. What did slave dealers sometimes do?
3. Why was it to the interest of an owner to treat his slaves kindly?
4. What privileges were given to slaves?
5. Give some particulars of the corn shucking festival; the log rolling.
6. What was the relation between master and slave?
7. Who were the Abolitionists? What were "Personal Liberty Laws?"

8. How did the people of North Carolina stand on the slavery question?
9. Who had the best right to settle the negro problem?
10. Did the Southern people have the right to own slaves?

CHAPTER LV.

NORTH CAROLINA SECEDES FROM THE UNION.

Election of Abraham Lincoln.—At the election in November, 1860, Abraham Lincoln, the candidate of the Abolitionists, was elected President of the United States, receiving the solid vote of his party and carrying most of the Northern States. He polled very few votes in the South. His election was sectional and had been accomplished because of the fact that the Democratic party had two candidates and had almost equally divided the vote between them.

Secession of Nine States.—Inasmuch as Mr. Lincoln had been elected by the Abolitionists and had declared himself opposed to allowing the Southern people to solve the negro problem alone, State after State resolved to leave the union. South Carolina was the first to pass an ordinance of secession, which was done December 20, 1860, as soon as it became evident that the government was to pass into the hands of the Abolitionists. Six other States, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana and Texas, quickly followed the example of South Carolina, and by February 1, 1861, had severed their connection with the Federal Union. Delegates from these seven se-

ceding States met in convention at Montgomery, Ala., February 4th, organized a provincial government called the Confederate States of America, and elected Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, President and Alexander H. Stephent, of Georgia, Vice-president. This was done one month before Lincoln became President of the United States. Virginia and Arkansas, soon therafter, passed ordinances of secession and cast their lots with the other seven. Richmond, Va., was chosen as the capital of the Confederacy as the nine seceding States now began to be called, and troops were rapidly raised for the war which seemed inevitable.

Conservation in North Carolina.—People in North Carolina were divided upon the question of secession. Many hoped for some other solution by which they might maintain their rights and preserve the constitution. George E. Badger, one of the conservative statesmen of the times, opposed secession. The Whig party and a large wing of the Democratic party steadfastly maintained that it would be suicidal to withdraw from the union. Many of the most prominent men in the State, among them William A. Graham, Zebulon B. Vance, Governor Ellis and others, were opposed to the State's casting her lot with the Southern Confederacy. Early in 1861, therefore, the Legislature, by a joint resolution of the two houses, decided to submit the question of calling a convention to the voters of the State. The election occurred on February 28th and by a small

but substantial majority the proposition to call a convention was voted down. Thus a majority of the people of the State expressed themselves as being opposed to secession.

Lincoln Calls for Volunteers.—April 12, 1861, Fort Sumter in the harbor of Charleston, S. C., garrisoned by United States troops, was bombarded and captured by Confederate soldiers under General George T. Beauregard. That event stirred the people both North and South. Not many people at that time really expected war. In the South it was thought by many that the right of secession would be acknowledged and the Confederacy would be established without great bloodshed. In the North a large part of the population were in favor of allowing the erring sisters, as Horace Greely expressed it, to depart in peace. It was, therefore, a great surprise when the news flashed over the country that Fort Sumter had fallen. Immediately President Lincoln called for seventy-five thousand volunteers to put down what he called a rebellion in the South. He called upon the governors of all the States to furnish their quotas of troops, that of North Carolina being about fifteen hundred. Governor Ellis replied that North Carolina would not furnish a man to fight her sister States and would give no aid whatever in a war against them.

In Conflict with the United States.—The refusal of Governor Ellis to respond to the call of President Lincoln brought North Carolina in direct conflict with the United States government. At

once, therefore, Governor Ellis called the Legislature together in extra session to determine what was best to be done. There was great excitement all over the State. The Legislature met and quickly issued a call for a convention to meet in Raleigh on May 20th. In the campaign which followed, the question really before the people was, "Shall North Carolina remain in the union and help to make war on her sister States in the South, or withdraw from the union and abide results?" It seemed to be war in either case. The election resulted in an overwhelming majority for the convention.

North Carolina Secedes.—When the convention met on May 20th, there was no one to uphold the Federal union. All the members were now secessionists. Badger, Graham, Davis, Vance and others, who had opposed the disruption of the union at first, now threw the weight of their influence in favor of an immediate separation from the Federal government. Senator Badger, in a burst of eloquence, expressed the sentiment of the convention when he said, "We have come to the parting of ways and we must take one or the other. Both ways lead to war, the one with our brethren of the South, the other with the North. Between the two it is not hard to choose. I cast my lot with the people of the South."

The vote was taken almost in silence on the first day of the convention and the ordinance was passed unanimously, dissolving the union which had existed for seventy-four years. North Caro-

lina was the next to the last to join the union in 1789 and the next to the last to leave it in 1861. Tennessee followed on June 8th.

QUESTIONS.

1. Tell how Lincoln was elected President.
2. What States seceded in December and January, 1861?
3. Who were elected President and Vice-president of the Confederacy?
4. What city was selected as the capital?
5. How did the people of North Carolina stand on the question of secession?
6. What prominent men opposed secession?
7. How did the people vote on the matter?
8. What happened on April 12th?
9. How did Governor Ellis answer Lincoln's call for troops?
10. Why was the Legislature convened?
11. What question was before the people in the campaign?
12. How did the election carry?
13. How did the leading men stand on the question now?
14. What were the words of Senator Badger?
15. How was the vote taken and with what result?

CHAPTER LVI.

NORTH CAROLINA FIRST AT BETHEL.

Activity in North Carolina.—Although the State was late in seceding from the union, her soldiers were among the first to engage in active military operations. Twenty days after the ordinance of secession was passed, a regiment of North Carolina troops and some Virginians fought and won the first battle of the war at Bethel, near Yorktown, Va.

The Bethel Regiment.—The regiment that won the victory at Bethel was afterwards called the "Bethel regiment." It was organized at Raleigh early in May and was composed of some of the best men in the State. Daniel H. Hill, of Charlotte was elected Colonel. Hill was a veteran of the Mexican war and had been superintendent of a military school at Charlotte. He was well fitted for the position to which he was chosen. About the first of June the regiment was ordered to Yorktown, Va. The command left Raleigh amid the excitement of the times and arrived at Yorktown without delay. There the regiment was given a position of responsibility in the little army commanded by General James B. Magruder. The Federal army at Fort Monroe, near Yorktown, was under the command of General Benjamin F. But-

ler, afterwards called "Beast" Butler and old "Spoons" on account of his alleged cruelties and plunderings at New Orleans. At that time Butler was planning to make an advance upon Richmond, the capital of the Confederacy.

Hill Sent to Bethel.—To check the threatened advance of the Federals, General Magruder sent Colonel Hill to occupy an outpost at Bethel Church. When the North Carolinians came to the place, they found that some of the scouts from the Federal army had been there before them; for, on the walls of the church were written such expressions as "Death to the traitors!" "Down with the rebels!" and other like phrases. Colonel Hill took possession and fortified his position with earthworks, behind which his men and a few companies of Virginia militia lay and waited for the Federal advance.

Advance of the Federal Army.—As soon as Butler heard that Hill had fortified himself at Bethel, he sent forty-four hundred men under General Pierce to dislodge him. Hill had only fourteen hundred men to meet this large force, but his little army was eager to meet the enemy, and he, therefore, felt sure of victory. To deceive the Federals the North Carolinians and the Virginians covered their earthworks with boughs of trees, and lay perfectly still behind them. General Pierce left his camp about midnight so as to reach Bethel early on the morning of June 10th, and attack Colonel Hill before light. He divided his force into two divisions and sent them on by dif-

ferent roads. The two roads came together at a point about three miles from Bethel Church, and when the two divisions reached that point each thought the other a Confederate army and opened fire in the darkness. For some time the battle raged, much to the delight of Hill and his men, who lay behind their breastworks and shouted to the Federals who were shooting one another. Soon, however, the conflict ceased as the mistake was discovered, and the two divisions united in an attack upon the Confederate position. The North Carolinians were ready and poured into their ranks a raking fire.

Volunteers Called For.—After being repulsed a company of Federal sharp-shooters took position in a house near the lines and poured into the Confederates a galling fire. Colonel Hill resolved to burn the house. He called for volunteers to set fire to the house, and five young men stepped forward. One of the volunteers was Henry L. Wyatt, of Edgecombe County. With hatchets, kindling wood, and matches in hand, the five heroes leaped over the earthworks and began their perilous run to the house. The Federals opened upon them with all of their guns, and bullets were as thick as hail. No one could live in such a storm of shot and shell as that. Henry Wyatt fell dead with a bullet in his forehead, and the others retreated to the earthworks. Then the Confederates turned their guns upon the house and it was soon in flames.

Retreat of the Federals.—Soon thereafter the

Federals were driven from the field with a loss of about seventy-five men. They retreated in haste to Fort Monroe and made no further attempt to capture Bethel. This was the first battle of the war, and Wyatt was the first Confederate soldier to be killed, and the only one killed in this battle. While the battle was an unimportant affair it showed the Federal authorities that the Confederates were in earnest, and that a long war was before them.

QUESTIONS.

1. What was the first battle of the war?
2. What soldiers were in this battle?
3. Who was Colonel Hill?
4. Where was the regiment ordered to?
5. Who commanded the Federal army at Fort Monroe?
6. What was he planning to do?
7. Where was Colonel Hill sent?
8. What did the troops find at Bethel Church?
9. What did Colonel Hill do?
10. What was the size of the Federal army sent against him?
11. What happened to the Federal army in the darkness?
12. For what were volunteers called? Who responded?
13. What happened to them?
14. What was the loss of the Federals?
15. Why was the battle important?

CHAPTER LVII.

THE STATE INVADED.

War Preparations.—During the summer of 1861, thousands of men volunteered for the war. North Carolina was like one great military camp. Adjutant-General James G. Martin was the leader in these preparations. Soldiers were drilling in nearly every neighborhood. Before the year was out forty-five regiments had been equipped and sent to the front. By the first of the next year North Carolina had more soldiers in the field than any other southern state. Virginia was the battle ground, because Richmond was the capital of the Confederacy, and the Federals were trying to get it in their possession. President Davis ordered nearly all of North Carolina's best soldiers to Virginia to guard the capital city. As a consequence, very few soldiers were left to protect the State form any threatened attack.

Battle of Manassas.—On July 21st, a great battle was fought at Manassas, Va., in which the Federals under General McDowell were totally defeated by the Confederates under Generals Beauregard and Johnston. The sixth North Carolina regiment under Colonel Charles F. Fisher took part in this battle and helped to drive the Feder-

als from the field. Unfortunately, however, the gallant Colonel Fisher was slain.

North Carolina Unguarded.—In August, 1861, General Butler, the same who commanded the Federals at Fort Monroe in June, brought his army by ship down the coast and made an attack upon Fort Hattress, on the extreme eastern coast of North Carolina. That point was very poorly defended. Only a few Confederates were there in an old wooden fort, and the guns they had could hardly shoot across the river.

Federals Capture Hatteras.—When Butler came within range of the fort, the North Carolinians fired upon him with grape and canister. He backed off a little distance, where the balls of the Confederate guns could not reach him, and shot the fort to pieces. It took him two days to do that, but at the end of that time, August 29th, the Confederates, under Colonel William F. Martin, surrendered. That was a calamity to North Carolina, for it opened to the Federals all the sounds and rivers of the Albamarle and Pamlico sections.

Capture of Roanoke Island.—The Federals did not follow up their success at once. They remained at Hatteras several months. About the first of February, 1862, however, General Burnside, who had superseded General Butler, ordered an advance up the Albemarle Sound. The Confederates had posted themselves on Roanoke Island directly in the way of the movement of the enemy. Colonel H. M. Shaw was in command of the post, and had under him about twenty-two

hundred men. On February 7th, the Federals came in range of fort and were fired upon by the Confederates. Burnside landed about ten thousand men on the island and attacked the fort on several sides at once, and after a stubborn resistance the Confederates were compelled to surrender to overwhelming numbers.

Capture of Newbern.—Burnside began to advance against Newbern about the first of March, 1862. General L. O'B. Branch, with less than five thousand men was there to defend the city. He was no match, however, for the fifteen thousand Federals who came against him. The enemy made an assault upon the Confederate line on March 14th, and completely outflanked General Branch's little army, driving it easily before them and capturing Newbern.

Heroism of Vance.—There was one regiment in Branch's army that held its ground to the very last, only left the field when it was seen that all was lost. That was the Twenty-sixth North Carolina Regiment, commanded by Colonel Zebulan B. Vance. His men beat back every assault of the enemy, but when it was seen that the other part of the army had retired, Vance ordered a retreat. Seeing, however, that he was cut off from the main army, he made a wide detour around the Federals in order to rejoin the main army under Branch. Branch had retreated to Kinston and was sorrowing over the supposed capture of Vance and his regiment; but soon a drum beat was heard toward the south. All

looked in that direction, and saw Colonel Vance marching into town at the head of his regiment with colors flying and the band playing "Dixie." "Vance how did you escape?" asked General Branch, as soon as he came in speaking distance, "We all thought you and your regiment were captured."

"My regiment was about to capture the whole Yankee army," replied Vance in his characteristic way, "But we found there were more of them than we could bring away. So we left them." Shortly afterward Colonel Vance was elected governor of the State, and left the army to begin more important duties at the State capital.

Fall of Fort Macon.—In a short while after the fall of Newbern, the Federals made an attack upon Fort Macon at the entrance to Beaufort harbor. This was surrendered after a slight resistance. And so it came to pass early in 1862, that the Federals came into North Carolina and carried everything before them for a time. They established themselves at Newbern and Beaufort, and made no further advance that year.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Where is Hatteras? Kingston?
2. How many regiments did North Carolina send to Virginia in 1861?
3. Why was Virginia the battlefield?
4. Why was North Carolina left unguarded?
5. What brave North Carolina officer was killed at the battle of Manassas?

6. From what point did the Federals invade the State?
7. Tell how Fort Hatteras was captured?
8. Why was that a calamity to the State?
9. Who succeeded General Butler in command of the Federals?
10. Give an account of the capture of Roanoke Island.
11. Who commanded the Confederates at Newbern?
12. When did that town fall into the hands of the Federals?
13. Relate the story of Vance's heroism.
14. To what office was Vance soon afterward elected?
15. What other place in North Carolina did the Federals capture?

CHAPTER LVIII.

FURTHER PROGRESS OF THE WAR.

Building of Fort Fisher.—Early in 1862, Colonel William Lamb, of Norfolk, Va., was placed in command of the Thirty-sixth North Carolina Regiment and stationed at Federal Point, near the mouth of the Cape Fear River. Under instructions from the Confederate authorities Colonel Lamb built there a fort which afterward proved to be one of the strongest fortresses in the Southern States. It was named Fort Fisher, in honor of the lamented Colonel Charles F. Fisher, who was killed at the first battle of Manassas.

Little Fighting in North Carolina.—During the summer and fall of 1862 there was very little fighting in North Carolina. The Federals, after the fall of Newbern, overran many of the eastern counties, and established themselves in the larger towns of that section. Washington, Plymouth, Edenton, and Elizabeth City fell into their hands without resistance. During that time small forces of Confederate were stationed at Kinston, Goldsboro, and Rainbow Bend on the Roanoke River to watch the movements of the enemy. Thus the year passed without further operations in the State. Some of the greatest battles in all history, however, were being fought in other states, and as

North Carolina officers and men acted a conspicuous part in most of them, it will be necessary to follow some of these events somewhat closely.

Battle of Williamsburg.—About the first of May, 1862, the Federal army under General George B. McClellan began to advance from Fort Monroe, Va., against Richmond. The Confederate army, under General Joseph E. Johnston, retreated before him toward the Confederate Capital. At Williamsburg, on May 5th, Johnston turned upon his pursuers and gave them a bloody repulse. In this battle the Fifth North Carolina Regiment, under Colonel Duncan McRae, charged across an open field in the face of a destructive fire and captured a Federal battery; but it was done at a fearful cost. Nearly three-fourths of the men composing the regiment were either killed or wounded. Hardly an officer was left to command the regiment, Colonel McRae himself being among the wounded. After thus inflicting upon the enemy a heavy loss, Johnston continued his retreat toward Richmond.

Battle of Seven Pines.—At Seven Pines, near Richmond, on May 26th, was fought one of the bloodiest battles of the year. Johnston ordered General D. H. Hill to drive McClellan from his fortified position on the Chickahominy River. This was brilliantly done. Soon, however, being heavily reinforced, the Federals returned to the battle, which then raged with fury until both sides were exhausted. Colonel William D. Pender, in command of the Sixth North Carolina Regiment, made

a brilliant charge upon the enemy's lines and was personally commended by President Jefferson Davis, who was on the battle field and saw the heroic conduct of the North Carolinians. President Davis, with earnest words of praise, promoted Colonel Pender to the position of Brigadier-General, it being one of the few times such an honor was conferred upon an officer during a battle. Another brave North Carolinian, General J. J. Pettigrew, did heroic service also on this occasion. He was leading his brigade in a charge upon the Federal lines when he was shot through the neck and left for dead upon the field. He fell into the hands of the enemy, but was shortly afterward exchanged and returned to the army. In the same battle Colonel George B. Anderson's regiment, the gallant Fourth, suffered dreadful losses. It went into the battle with 520 effective men and came out with 58 fit for duty.

Battle of Antietam.—After a week of hard fighting around Richmond about the last of June, 1862, in which the Federals were beaten in nearly every conflict and driven to the shelter of their gunboats, General Robert E. Lee, now in command of the Confederate army, invaded Maryland in September and threatened to attack Washington. McClellan was hastily recalled from Virginia to defend the national Capital. The two armies met in a hotly contested battle at Antietam on September 17th. As in previous battles, North Carolina soldiers, forming more than one-third of Lee's army, distinguished themselves by their endurance and

bravery. General L. O'B. Branch, leading his brigade in a desperate charge, was mortally wounded. General George B. Anderson, another gallant son of North Carolina, was also killed in this battle. Lee, although he had less than half the number of men that were in the Federal army, held his ground throughout the battle, and slowly retreated afterward unmolested across the Potomac River into Virginia.

Battle of White Hall.—Near Kinston, December 15th, was fought the battle of White Hall. General N. G. Evans, of South Carolina, was in command of the Confederates stationed at Kinston, where he was furiously assailed by a Federal army, said to be twenty thousand strong, under General Foster, who was making a raid from Newbern upon Goldsboro. The battle raged all day, and at nightfall Foster retreated toward Goldsboro, leaving upon the field about two hundred dead and sending, it is said, more than a thousand wounded to Newbern. Foster pushed on toward Goldsboro, but at White Hall, about eighteen miles from Goldsboro, he was met by another Confederate force under General Beverly Robertson and fiercely attacked. Foster turned aside from his antagonists as best he could and kept on his march. Reading Goldsboro, Foster set fire to the railroad bridge there and retreated to Newbern. General Clingman, who was in command of the Confederates at Goldsboro, had repulsed the attack, but did not pursue the Federals.

Attack on Plymouth.—December 10, 1862, Colo-

nel W. F. Martin, in command of the small Confederate force at Rainbow Bend, attacked the Federals at Plymouth and drove them from the town. In the progress of the battle the town was almost destroyed by fire. Martin then retreated to Rainbow Bend, carrying with him twenty-five prisoners and seventy-five negroes, who had some time before escaped from their masters and joined the Federals. Shortly thereafter Plymouth was reoccupied by the enemy.

Close of the Second Year of the War.—At the close of 1862 people all over the South were rejoicing at the important victories that had been achieved. Nearly all the great battles of the year had been won by the Confederates. There was, therefore, a decided step toward the achievement of southern independence.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Point out the location of Fort Fisher; Washington; Edenton; Elizabeth City; Plymouth; Kinston; Goldsboro; Rainbow Bend; White Hall.
2. What fort did Colonel Lamb build at the mouth of the Cape Fear?
3. What did the Federals do in the eastern counties?
4. Where were Confederate forces established?
5. What was North Carolina's part in the battle of Williamsburg?

6. Give particulars about Pender in the battle of Seven Pines; about Pettigrew and Anderson.
7. Tell what part North Carolina played at Antietam.
8. Give particulars about Foster's raid upon Goldsboro.
9. Tell how Martin captured Plymouth.
10. How did matters stand at the close of 1862?

CHAPTER LIX.

PROGRESS OF EVENTS.

The Advance.—Early in 1862 the Federals had blockaded nearly every port in the southern states. As that cut the South off from the outside world, there was consequently suffering for the want of food and clothing. In order to relieve the privation in North Carolina to some extent, Governor Vance bought in England a fast running steam packet, known there as the "Lord Clyde," which he intended to transform into a blockade runner. The vessel was re-named the "Ad-Vance," in compliment to the governor, and put under the command of Captain Thomas M. Crossan. In charge of that skillful officer, the "Ad-Vance" made regular trips to Nassau, slipping by the Federal blockading squadron at the mouth of the Cape Fear, and brought in bacon, sugar, coffee, shoes, blankets, and clothing, which were obtained in exchange for cotton.

The Destruction of the "Ad-Vance."—The Federals made many efforts to capture the "Ad-Vance" but without success, because the North Carolina boat was a fast runner and used smokeless coal. Finally, however, near the close of the war she, while on a trip, ran out of the smokeless coal, and

had to use the Deep River coal, which left such a smoky trail behind that she was easily tracked, run down by the Federal boats, and destroyed.

A Pretender.—In consequence of the Conscription Act, which passed the Legislature in the winter of 1862, by which all able-bodied men between eighteen and forty-five were compelled to join the Confederate armies, there was some excitement and disturbance in a few neighborhoods in the State. In Randolph County a man by the name of Marble Nash Taylor, being supported, it was supposed by the Federal authorities at Washington, denounced the Conscription Act, and proclaimed himself Governor of North Carolina, issuing a proclamation calling upon the people of the State to secede from the Southern Confederacy and rejoin the United States. His proclamation excited only a little laughter and no one heeded it. He was threatened with punishment by the State authorities, and was glad to escape by surrendering his pretensions.

Hospitals for Soldiers.—Governor Vance, in order to afford all the comfort he could to North Carolina soldiers, established wayside hospitals at Weldon, Goldsboro, Wilmington, Raleigh, Greensboro, Salisbury, and Charlotte, where sick and wounded soldiers were cared for, and where those who were passing to and from their homes to the front might stop and rest. In these hospitals there were skilled physicians and trained nurses to relieve the suffering of the wounded and dying. Many patriotic ladies offered their services as

nurses in those hospitals, and did many a deed of charity among the unfortunate sufferers.

Battle of Chancellorsville.—In the meantime desperate fighting was going on in Virginia. At Chancellorsville was fought on the first three days of May, 1863, one of the bloodiest battles of the war. Lee, with an army of about forty thousand men, nearly one-half of whom were North Carolinians, defeated a Federal army of one hundred and twenty thousand under General Hooker, and drove them across the Rappahannock River. Of the ten thousand Confederates lost in this battle about one-half were from North Carolina. By this victory the way was opened for an invasion of Pennsylvania, which Lee was not slow in putting into execution. Before following that eventful invasion, however, two or three events that happened in North Carolina must be noted.

The Federal Raiders Baffled.—Near the last of June, 1863, a fleet of Federal gunboats came up the Chowan River from Edenton, and near Winton landed a regiment of cavalry, which attacked and dispersed a small Confederate force at Hill's Bridge, Hertford County. Two days later another small Confederate force was attacked near Murfreesboro and defeated. The Federal cavalry, then under Colonel Spear, pushed on toward Weldon, intending to burn the railroad bridge at that point. At Boon's Mill, however, in Northampton County, they were met by a small Confederate force under General M. W. Ransom, and, after an obstinate engagement, were driven from the field. General

Ransom and his victorious troops pursued the Federals until they found shelter with their gunboats on the Chowan.

The Buffaloes.—In many of the eastern counties there were some unpatriotic white men, who took sides with the Federals and became spies upon their neighbors. They entered into arrangements with the enemy stationed at Plymouth, Newbern Washington, and Edenton, by which they could pass into those places and carry news of the movements of the Confederates and do other treasonable things. The patriotic North Carolinians called them "Buffaloes" and would have nothing whatever to do with them. They were thoroughly despised, ostracised from society, and expelled from the churches of which they were members.

QUESTIONS.

1. What was the result of the blockade of southern ports in 1862?
2. How did Governor Vance relieve the sufferings in North Carolina?
3. What did the "Ad-Vance" do?
4. Tell how the "Ad-Vance" was destroyed.
5. Why was there some local disturbances in the winter of 1862?
6. What did Marble Nash Taylor do?
7. Where did Governor Vance establish hospitals?
8. What occurred at Chancellorsville?

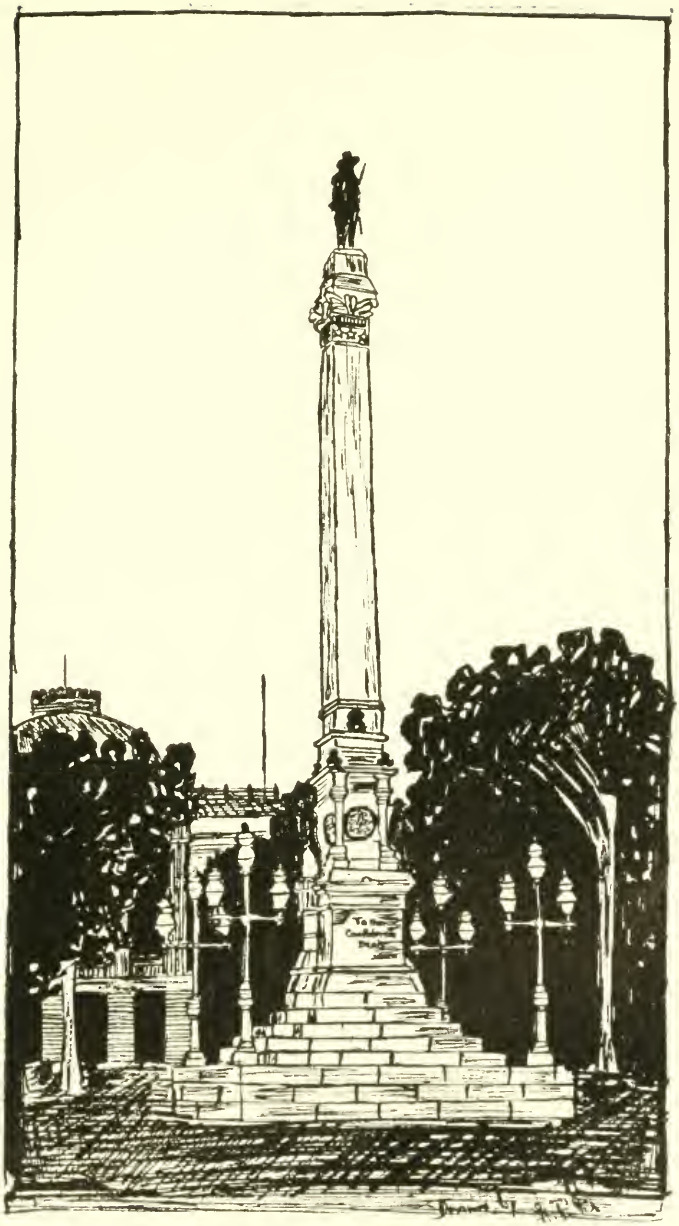
9. What part of Lee's army in that battle were North Carolinians?
10. What occurred at Hill's Bridge?
11. What was the object of Colonel Spear's raid?
12. Where and how was he defeated?
13. Who were the Buffaloes?
14. How were they regarded by the patriotic North Carolinians?

CHAPTER LX.

FARTHEST TO THE FRONT AT GETTYSBURG.

Lee Marches to the Northward.—Soon after the battle of Chancellorsville, General Lee led his victorious army northward, intending to carry the war into the enemy's country. At that time he had sixty-eight thousand of the finest troops ever assembled in America. North Carolina, along with the other states of the South, had sent the flower of her soldiery to aid in this great enterprise. General Pettigrew with fresh levies hurried from Goldsboro to Virginia and joined Lee a few days before the grand army began its march to the Potomac.

Battle of the Big Hats.—Crossing the Potomac River about the last of June, Lee marched through Maryland into Pennsylvania. The Federal army had hastened from Virginia, and, now numbering one hundred and eighteen thousand muskets under General Meade, was strongly posted at Gettysburg, Pa. The vanguard of the Confederates pushed on to Harrisburg, the capital of Pennsylvania, and excited fear and alarm there. As Colonel Bryan Grimes, with his North Carolina regiment, which was leading the van, approached Harrisburg, about five hundred men of the Pennsylvania state guard



Soldiers Monument at Raleigh, N. C.

came out to drive back the "bloody rebels," as they called the Confederates. The Pennsylvanians were wearing sugar-loafed hats and stiff standing collars, and marched forward with drums beating and banners flying. Colonel Grimes saw them coming and concealed his men near the road and waited. The high hats came bobbing along until they came in good range, when Grimes ordered his men to fire. At the first discharge the sugar-loafed hats began to fly in every direction, and after the flight the road was strewn with headgear. Grimes and his men gathered up the hats and bore them off in triumph.

First Day at Gettysburg.—On July 1st General Pettigrew, leading the firing line of Lee's army, came in sight of the Federals posted on Seminary Ridge, and at once attacked them. The division of Heth, under the command of Pettigrew and Pender, stormed the enemy's entrenchments and drove them at the point of the bayonet from their guns through the streets of Gettysburg. The fleeing Federals took refuge upon the impregnable heights of Cemetery Ridge, and the pursuing Confederates halted for a much needed rest.

Second Day's Battle.—Next day the battle was renewed with determination on both sides. Pender's division was in the attacking column and a part of his command captured a portion of the enemy's works, but General Pender himself was mortally wounded and taken from the field in a dying condition. His death was a serious loss to the Confederacy. With desperate courage and

energy the Federals maintained their position, and at the close of the day was still in possession of Cemetery Ridge.

Pettigrew's Charge.—On July 3rd Pettigrew and Pickett made the famous charge upon Cemetery Ridge. General Lee selected Pickett's Virginians and Pettigrew's North Carolinians to make this last attempt to drive the Federals from their position. Pettigrew's men were not in the best of condition that day, for they had fought hard on the first day of the battle, and as they stood in line ready to charge many of them had their heads and hands bandaged from wounds already received. Pickett's men, on the other hand, were fresh and had not been in battle. When the signal was given, these two divisions of brave men moved steadily across the plain toward the enemy's works. All the Federal batteries opened upon them, and great gaps were made in their ranks, but they did not flinch. On they went until some reached the Federal works, leaped over the embankments, and bayonetted the men at their guns. Some of Pettigrew's men seized a battery, turned the guns upon the fleeing gunners, and drove them to the woods beyond. But the works thus captured could not be held. So many had been killed in the charge that the few who reached the works looked around and found themselves almost alone amid the thousands of the enemy, and were either killed or captured before they could retreat to a place of safety. On account of a bend in the enemy's works Pettigrew's column had to go far-

ther than Pickett's to reach the entrenchments. Both columns were compelled to fall back, because they were not properly supported. General Lee rode forward to meet the disheartened soldiers as they returned from the charge. He raised his hat as they cheered, and said: "You have done all that brave men could do. This is my fault. I have lost this battle."

The Retreat From Gettysburg.—After waiting in his camp two days to see if Meade would attack him, Lee began his retreat to Virginia. General Pettigrew was put in command of the rear guard as a post of honor to beat off the Federal attacks. While the army was crossing the Potomac the Federal made several assaults upon the rear line, but were each time beaten back with severe losses. In one of these attacks General Pettigrew was desperately wounded. He was taken across the river and carried to the home of a well-to-do farmer, where shortly afterward he died. In this campaign North Carolina lost two of her ablest generals and about four thousand men.

QUESTIONS.

1. What did General Lee intend to do when he began his march northward?
2. How many men were in Lee's army? In Meade's?
3. Relate the story of the big hats.
4. What was done in the first day's battle? The second?

5. What is said of General Pender?
6. Who led the charge on the third day?
7. In what condition were Pettigrew's men? Pickett's?
8. How far did the attacking column go?
9. What did some of Pettigrew's men do?
10. Why did they not hold the works?
11. What were General Lee's words to them?
12. How was General Pettigrew killed?
13. How many men did North Carolina lose in the Gettysburg campaign?
14. Which column of soldiers went the farthest to the front at Gettysburg?

CHAPTER LXI.

PICKETT'S ATTACK ON NEWBERN.

Depreciation of Confederate Money.—Early in 1863 some business men, in portions of the South, began to refuse Confederate money in payment of debts, or in purchase of commodities. Their refusal caused others to doubt the value of the currency, and by the last of the year Confederate bills were worth only about five per cent. of their face value. This lack of confidence came about by the over-issue of paper money by the Confederate government and the states of the Confederacy, and the disasters to the Confederate arms at Vicksburg and Gettysburg. In consequence of this depreciation the prices of all goods were fabulously high. Molasses sold for eight dollars a gallon, meal at fifteen dollars a bushel, sugar at one and a half dollars a pound, meat at one dollar a pound, black pepper at eight dollars a pound, and other things in proportion.

Negro Soldiers.—During the same year the Federal authorities offered extra inducements to negro slaves to leave their masters in the South and join the Union army, promising them freedom and good pay in the service of the United States. Many slaves accepted the offer and fled from their homes. To the credit of the negroes, it should be said,

however, the bulk of them remained faithful to their masters, stayed on the farms, made the crops, and took care of their mistresses while their masters were in the Confederate army fighting to keep them in slavery. Those that fled to the Federals were put into companies and regiments by themselves.

Pickett Sent to North Carolina.—Near the last of January, 1864, General Pickett, one of the heroes of the third day's battle at Gettysburg, was sent from Virginia into North Carolina with a division of troops with orders to drive the Federals out of Newbern. Without delay he attacked the enemy's works near the town, but was repulsed with considerable loss. In the meantime, General J. G. Martin, with a brigade of North Carolina soldiers, attacked the Federals at Shepherdsville, a few miles east of Newbern, and drove them from their position. Martin intended pushing on toward Newbern and assisting General Pickett in the capture of that place, but, learning that the attack had already been made and had failed, he withdrew his forces.

A Daring Feat Planned.—February 1st the Federal gunboat Underwriter was captured and destroyed by the Confederates within rifle shot of the Federal batteries in the harbor of Newbern. It was one of the most daring achievements of the war. The Underwriter was a powerful gunboat that had come into North Carolina waters in 1862. She had fired the first gun at Roanoke Island, and had assisted in the capture of Newbern. Since that

time the formidable craft had been lying idly at the wharf, but always ready to resist any attack that might be made to recapture the town. A plan was laid to destroy the boat, and Captain John T. Wood, who was stationed at Kinston, was given the duty of carrying out the plan. Four cutters were brought by rail from Wilmington and three from Petersburg, Va., and put into the river at Kinston for the use of the attacking party.

Capture of the Underwriter.—Embarking upon these flat-bottomed boats, Wood and his determined band rowed down the river, and on the night of February 1, 1864, silently approached the Underwriter as she lay at anchor in the harbor. Before reaching the side of the boat Wood and his men were discovered and fired upon, but they made no stop. Bending low to their oars and dogding the shells as best they could, the Confederates reached the Underwriter, climbed to the deck, fighting hand to hand with the enemy, and in a brief time had them beaten to their quarters and forced to surrender. Captain Wood then gave orders to get the vessel under way and to carry her up the river. It was found, however, that the fires were banked and there was not steam enough to move her. At the same time the Federal batteries along the river began firing. It was, therefore, decided to burn the boat where she lay. Kindling a fire in the wheel-house, the Confederates with their prisoners left, and the Underwriter was soon enveloped in flames. In this daring deed the Federals lost six men killed, twenty-two

wounded, and nineteen prisoners. About thirty of the enemy leaped into the river during the fight and escaped. The Confederate loss was slight.

Pickett Recalled to Virginia.—General Pickett, after his unsuccessful assault on Newbern, and even before the Underwriter was destroyed, retreated to Kinston and there awaited orders. Shortly afterward he was recalled to Virginia, and the effort to drive the Federals from Newbern was abandoned. Thus an enterprise which at first promised complete success and which meant much to the people of eastern North Carolina ended in dismal failure. The Federals retained possession of Newbern to the close of the war.

QUESTIONS.

1. Why did Confederate money depreciate in value?
2. Give some prices of goods at that time.
3. What inducements did the Federal authorities offer the negroes to join them?
4. How did most of the slaves act?
5. Why was General Pickett sent to North Carolina?
6. What did he do at Newbern?
7. What success had General Martin?
8. What was the Underwriter?

9. What was the plan to destroy it?
10. Who had command of the expedition?
11. Tell how the Federal boat was captured.
12. Why was the Underwriter burned?
13. What were the losses?
14. What did General Pickett do after his failure?

CHAPTER LXII.

THE RAM ALBEMARLE AND THE CAPTURE OF PLYMOUTH.

General Hoke Sent Against Plymouth.—After Pickett's failure at Newbern in February, 1864, no further attempt was made to drive the Federals from the State until April of the same year. Near the beginning of that month General R. F. Hoke was ordered to proceed, with his division, against the Federal works at Plymouth. Hoke had been with Pickett in the attack on Newbern and felt keenly the disappointment there.

The Ram Albemarle.—To aid in the attack on Plymouth the Ram Albemarle was sent from Halifax with orders to co-operate with General Hoke and his forces. This formidable vessel of war was built at Edward's Ferry on Roanoke River near Scotland Neck, and was so strongly wrought with iron rails that no common ball of that day could pierce her hull. No vessel's beak could damage her. Being covered like the roof of a house with iron beams, no enemy could leap on board. The muzzles of the cannons projected from holes in the roof. She was a strong and dangerous looking craft. Captain James W. Cooke, with a crew of valiant Confederate seamen, was in command.

Attack on Plymouth.—About the midde of April,

1864, the Albemarle left Edward's Ferry and steamed down the river toward Plymouth. By previous arrangement, General Hoke led his forces against the town at the same time. April 19th the advanced line of Hoke's command made an assault upon the enemy's outposts, and after a sharp conflict dislodged the sharp-shooters, who retreated in haste to the town. During the night of the nineteenth of April, General Matt Ransom, in command of a brigade in Hoke's division, proceeded under orders to the east of the Federal works and was in readiness to attack the enemy at dawn. Early next day the attack was made upon the Federal lines from three directions. The Albemarle came down the Roanoke, turning round and round, firing a broadside at each turn. The Federal gunboat "Southfield" was lying at the wharf, and began to fire upon the Albemarle, but without effect. The "Southfield" was struck a dozen times and was soon at the bottom of the river. Without slacking speed the Albemarle began to fire on the Federal entrenchments along the river and soon had them in a ruined condition.

Ransom's Successful Assault.—Meanwhile General Ransom had been successful on the east, where the strongest defences were. At the head of his brigade he charged across an open field in the face of a terrible fire of musketry. Five hundred Confederates fell in the charge, but the survivors reached the Federal works, leaped into the midst of the enemy and fought them hand to hand. The conflict was of short duration, for General

Wessells, the Federal officer in command, seeing further resistance hopeless, surrendered his entire force of 2,834 men and equipments to the victors. Besides the prisoners and munitions of war, a large number of runaway slaves were recaptured. The Confederate Congress passed a vote of thanks to General Hoke and Captain Cooke for this brilliant victory. General Hoke was shortly afterward promoted to the rank of major-general.

The Albemarle and the Federal Gunboats.—Soon after the capture of Plymouth, eight Federal gunboats came into the Albemarle Sound and anchored near the mouth of the Roanoke River, eight miles from Plymouth. Captain Cooke headed the Albemarle down the river to meet the new foe. As soon as the strange looking Confederate boat came in sight every Federal gun was turned upon her, but the balls glanced from the iron roof like peas. The Albemarle ran into the midst of the fleet, firing broadside after broadside with terrible effect. Several of the enemy's vessels next tried to ram the Albemarle, but their iron beaks could make no impression. Then they tried to clog the wheels of the Confederate boat, but failed each time. Finally all of the Federal boats gave up the fight and fled in a crippled condition. The Albemarle went back to Plymouth in triumph.

The Albemarle Blown Up.—In October, 1864, the Albemarle was blown up by the Federals. She was lying at anchor, at Plymouth, one stormy night when Lieutenant Cushing of the Federal navy in a small rowboat stealthily approached and

exploded a torpedo, immediately under the boat, blowing a large hole in the hull. The invincible roof-like boat sank to the bottom. Lieutenant Cushing, however, fell into the hands of the Confederates, and was held as a prisoner of war. Plymouth was held by the Confederates.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Locate Plymouth; Edward's Ferry; Scotland Neck.
2. Who was sent against Plymouth in 1864?
3. What aid did he get?
4. When and how was the Albemarle built?
5. Who was captain of the Albemarle?
6. What was the success of the first attack on Plymouth?
7. What was General Ransom ordered to do?
8. Describe the attack of the Albemarle.
9. Give an account of Ransom's attack on the east.
10. What were the losses on each side?
11. Give an account of the naval battle at the mouth of the river.
12. How was the Albemarle blown up?
13. What became of Cushing?

CHAPTER LXIII.

THE WAR IN VIRGINIA.

Grant's Invasion of the South.—In the spring of 1864, another powerful Federal army under the command of General U. S. Grant was sent into Virginia. This was the last great invasion of the South by the Federals. Grant had under his command more than one hundred thousand men, and it was expected throughout the North that he would end the war in three months. He began to advance upon Richmond, May 6th, but at every turn he found General Lee in his front. First at the Wilderness, where the two armies fought fiercely for two days, Grant was beaten back with tremendous loss; and after being forced backward for miles, he sent to President Lincoln his famous message, "We shall fight it out on this line if it takes all summer." For about thirty days there were almost daily conflicts, in which Grant lost almost as many men as Lee had at any time in his army.

Federals Capture Earthworks at Spottsylvania.—On the morning of May 12, 1864, just before daylight, Grant made a desperate assault upon Lee's earthworks at Spottsylvania and captured the portion known as the "Bloody Angle" together with about seven thousand prisoners. Two re-

doubts of Lee's lines were thus in the hands of the enemy and the whole Confederate position was endangered. In the desperate charge of the Confederates in recapturing the works General Stephen D. Ramseur and his North Carolina brigade were conspicuous for gallantry, as were Colonel Bryan Grimes and his regiment.

Ramseur's Charge.—It fell to Ramseur's brigade to retake the redoubts, and as soon as possible after the order was received the command was drawn up in line of battle. General Ramseur addressed his men, telling them that the works must be retaken, and that every man was expected to do his duty. With Ramseur leading, the whole line moved forward in a run. The Federals poured into them a destructive fire, and the men began to waver. Putting spurs to his horse, Ramseur galloped forward to the head of the column.

"North Carolinians," said he, "if you are men, follow me to yonder breastwork."

On rushed the charging line up to the earthworks in the face of a murderous fire, climbed over the fortifications, and drove the Federals in confusion from the redoubt. The work was just half done, however, for the other redoubt had to be retaken.

The Second Redoubt Retaken.—For a brief time the brigade rested in the entrenchment, and were then ready for the next assault. Over the works the Carolinians tumbled and made a rush for the remaining position. The Federals were ready and raked the advancing columns with terrible effect.

Not a man faltered though hundreds were shot down. The Federals held their ground until the Confederates came up so close that the reports of the musketry of both sides went up in one common roar. Leaping over the parapets the North Carolinians bayonetted the gunners, seized their guns and drove them from their position. Thus the two redoubts were retaken, though at fearful cost to Ramseur's brigade. The enemy tried to recapture the redoubts, but failed in every attempt. All day the fearful carnage continued. Late in the evening Grant drew back and began another flank movement toward Richmond. After the battle, General Lee thanked Ramseur for his gallant and successful charge, and promoted him to the rank of major-general. Colonel Bryan Grimes was also promoted to the rank of brigadier-general, as was also Colonel W. R. Cox. General Junius Daniel, a gallant and lamented son of North Carolina, fell mortally wounded in this bloody battle.

The Gatling Gun.—May 16, 1864, occurred the account of another brigade on their left giving way River, near Petersburg, Va., in which General Beauregard attacked and defeated a Federal army under General Butler, "bottling" him up on the peninsula between the James and the Appomattox rivers. This battle is noteworthy from the fact that it was the first in which the famous Gatling gun was used. Dr. Richard J. Gatling, the inventor of the gun, was reared in Hertford County but was living at that time in Indiana. His invention is a revolving machine gun that will shoot

about twentlve hundred times a minute, and is one of the most formidable weapons of war known to mankind. By this invention, Dr. Gatling became one of the most famous men ever reared in North Carolina.

Battle of Cold Harbor.—Grant continued to advance toward Richmond by the left flank. On June 3rd, he attacked Lee's lines at Cold Harbor and in thirty minutes he lost ten thousand men in useless assaults on the impregnable Confederate position. In this battle General Thomas L. Clingman's North Carolina brigade suffered heavily on accoutn of another brigade on their left giving way before a Federal advance and exposing their flank to a galling fire. Clingman forced his command to the left, as soon as he perceived the danger, and furiously assailed the enemy, driving the Federals in confusion from that part of the field. Grant ordered his men to make assault after assault upon Lee's lines, but failure marked every attempt. Finally the attacking line refused to obey orders and the slaughter ceased. Grant then advanced upon Petersburg, but even then he found Lee ahead of him. Grant laid seige to the city and hammered at Lee's lines for nine months before he broke them.

Charge at Ream's Station.—About the middle of August, 1864, the Federals seized Ream's Station on the Petersburg Railroad, thereby cutting Lee's communication with the South. It was, therefore, a dangerous condition, and, unless the post was retaken, it meant the isolation and capture of

Lee's army. To recapture the position, four North Carolina brigades, Cooke's, McRae's, Lane's, and Scales,', numbering seventeen hundred and fifty men, were ordered forward. With dauntless courage these brigades, unaided, assaulted the enemy's works, carried them at the point of the bayonet and captured 2,200 prisoners besides thirteen pieces of artillery. This brilliant act of heroism received warm words of praise from General Lee.

QUESTIONS.

1. Where were battles fought between Lee and Grant?
2. Where and how was Lee's position endangered?
2. What were General Grant's losses?
3. Where and how was Lee's position endan-
5. Tell how Ramseur retook the redoubts.
6. What did Grant next do? What honors came to Ramseur, Grimes and Cox?
7. What gallant North Carolina general was killed?
8. What took place at Bermuda Hundred? What is the Gatling gun?
9. Relate General Clingman's exploit at Cold Harbor.
10. Why did the battle cease at Cold Harbor?
11. Why did Grant fail at Petersburg?
12. Relate the exploit at Reams' Station. What is said of it?

CHAPTER LXIV.

FALL OF WILMINGTON.

Butler Sent Against Fort Fisher.—Late in the fall of 1864 a strong Federal fleet, carrying a large land force, was sent against Fort Fisher. Admiral Porter was in command of the fleet. General B. F. Butler led the land forces. The Confederates in the fort, numbering about 2,000 men, were under the immediate command of Colonel William Lamb and General W. H. C. Whiting, who at this particular time was serving as a volunteer without rank. Besides Fort Fisher, there were other Confederate strongholds on the Cape Fear, and Wilmington, thirty miles up the river, was garrisoned by a small command under General Braxton Bragg.

Christmas Guns.—On the night of December 23rd the Federal fleet came to anchor just out of range of the guns of Fort Fisher. Late in the night the Federals loaded up an old ship with 215 tons of cannon powder and sent it in to be exploded near the fort; but before it came within half a mile of Fort Fisher there was a terrific explosion and the old ship sank to the bottom. No damage whatever was done to the fort. Next morning, however, the whole Federal fleet came in range of the fort and opened upon the Con-

federate works with five hundred iron throats. All day the giant struggle went on, the Federal guns pouring a torrent of lead and iron upon the devoted fort and the heroic garrison replying with spirit and execution. It was one of the greatest bombardments in the world's history. At night the Federals drew off, and Colonel Lamb repaired the damages, expecting the fleet to return next day. Early Christmas morning the Federals renewed the attack and kept it up all day and far into the night. The Confederates used the famous Armstrong gun and did great damage to the enemy's vessels. Next day the battle continued. The Federals landed an attacking force, but the garrison poured into them such a destructive fire that they hastily retreated to the protection of the ships. During the night of December 26th the fleet sailed away leaving the heroic little garrison masters of the situation.

The Enemy Return to the Attack.—In about two weeks' time, the Federals, in larger numbers than before, returned savagely to the attack. Butler had been removed from the command and General Terry had been apointed to succeed him. In the meantime, General Bragg had withdrawn some of the troops from Fort Fisher and had left that important post weakened. As soon as the Federal fleet hove in sight, Colonel Lamb hestily sent to Wilmington for reinforcements, but none could be sent, as a large force of the enemy had been landed between Wilmington and the fort cutting off all hope of assistance.

Fall of Fort Fisher.—Having effected a landing the Federals began the attack upon the doomed fort by sea and land. The few Confederates, thus cut off from all chance of escape, or succor, fought stubbornly for two days and finally surrendered to overwhelming numbers. The garrison lost about 500 men in killed and wounded and 2083 prisoners. The Federal loss was over 1500 in killed and wounded. General Whiting was mortally wounded. Colonel Lamb was also wounded and fell into the hands of the enemy.

Capture of Wilmington.—After the fall of Fort Fisher, the Federals began their advance upon Wilmington. The Confederate forts on the river fell into their hands one after the other until there was nothing to hinder the march of the enemy. General Hoke, who with his division was at Sugar Loaf, was compelled to fall back before overwhelming numbers. Giving up Wilmington the Confederates retreated toward Goldsboro. With the fall of Wilmington the Federal control of Southern ports was now complete. Communication with the outside world was entirely cut off, and despondancy began to settle upon the South.

QUESTIONS.

1. What Federal force was sent against Fort Fisher?
2. Who were in command at Fort Fisher and
3. Relate the particulars about Butler's Christmas gun.
4. What happened on Christmas eve?
5. What was done on Christmas day?
6. When did the Federals return to the attack?
7. Who was now in command of the Federals?
8. How had the fort been weakened?
9. Why could not reinforcements be sent?
10. Relate particulars of the capture of the fort.
11. What was the losses in the battle?
12. Why did the Confederate surrender?
13. What was General Hoke compelled to do?
14. Why did the South begin to despair?

CHAPTER LXV.

SHERMAN INVADES THE STATE.

Hoke Retires to Goldsboro.—Following the capture of Wilmington, the scattered Confederates retreated toward Goldsboro. Leaving a garrison in the captured city, the Federals hastened in close pursuit. General Hoke, who was in command of the Confederates, turned upon his pursuers at Kinston and repulsed them. He then continued his retreat to Goldsboro, where he awaited orders.

Large Federal Force Enter the State.—All hope of driving the Federals from the State now seemed vain; for they had come into the eastern section in overwhelming numbers, and there was no Confederate force able to stand before them. Besides, General W. T. Sherman was at the time on his way from South Carolina with nearly a hundred thousand men, marching northward to join Grant in his final assault on Lee's lines around Richmond and Petersburg. Sherman had already over-run Georgia and South Carolina, burned much of the city of Columbia, and laid waste a broad strip of country through which he had marched.

Confederate Forces.—To oppose these overwhelming numbers, the Confederates had only one

division under Hoke at Goldsboro. North Carolina had already sent to Virginia and other States more than a hundred thousand men, and now in her hour of sorest need there was only a handful of brave defenders to withstand this mighty invasion. But help came from other States. General Hardie hurried from Charleston, S. C., with a few thousand men; General Chatham brought a small force from Tennessee; General Wade Hampton led a division of cavalry from Virginia; and General Joseph Wheeler another from Alabama. These bodies of troops united made an army of 20,000 men, which, being joined by the division under General Hoke, was ready to take the field against Sherman. General Joseph E. Johnston, of Virginia, who had beaten Sherman in several battles the year previous near Atlanta, was put in command of the whole.

Hampton at Fayetteville.—General Sherman, at the head of his army, came into North Carolina about the middle of March, 1865. When his vanguard reached Fayetteville, his cavalry came upon the Confederate troopers and a sharp conflict took place. General Hampton, the Confederate cavalry leader, was eating dinner at a hotel in Fayetteville when the Federal horsemen came galloping into town. Getting up from the table without ceremony, Hampton rushed out and, putting himself at the head of a portion of his division, led a sweeping charge, met the enemy hand to hand in the street, struck down two of them with his own hand, and drove the command in confusion from

the town. Seeing, however, that he could not hold his position against the whole Federal army, he retired to Bentonville, Johnston County. The Federals entered Fayetteville, burnt the printing plant of the Fayetteville Observer, the Confederate arsenal, along with other property and followed Hampton toward Bentonville.

Confederates Make a Stand at Bentonville.—At Averasboro General Hardie withstood for a time the attacks of a part of Sherman's army, but as his force was too small to resist the troops sent against him, he, too, retired toward Bentonville, where General Johnston had collected 15,000 men and awaited the approach of Sherman.

Battle of Bentonville.—As soon as he came near Bentonville, Sherman ordered an attack upon the Confederate works. The Confederates waited until the enemy were in good range and fired into their faces. The Federals fled in dismay, but advanced again to the charge only to receive the same kind of welcome from Hake and his North Carolinians. Six times the enemy charged the Confederate lines, but each time the merciless fire of Johnston's troops sent them flying from the field. At this point Johnston ordered a bayonet charge. General D. H. Hill led the advance, stormed three successive breastworks, and at the point of the bayonet drove the enemy before him. Sherman, however, recovered himself and ordered another advance along his whole line, and Johnston retreated. This battle occurred March 19, 1865, and was one of the most brilliant conflicts

of the war. The loss was heavy on both sides, but the Federal loss in killed, wounded, and prisoners was far in excess of the Confederates. After the battle, Sherman retired to Goldsboro where he was joined by heavy reinforcements. Johnston retreated toward Raleigh.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Where is Kinston? Averasboro? Bentonville? Goldsboro?
2. What did General Hoke do after the fall of Wilmington?
3. What large Federal forces were coming into the State?
4. What had Sherman already done?
5. What force had North Carolina to oppose these?
6. Mention the help that came from other States?
7. Who was put in command of the army thus collected?
8. Give particulars of the affair at Fayetteville.
9. Where did the Confederates make a stand?
10. How many men had Johnston?
11. How many times did Sherman attack Johnston at Bentonville?
12. Who led the Confederate counter charge?
13. What success did Hill meet with?
14. Where did the two armies go after the battle?

CHAPTER LXVI.

LAST AT APPOMATTOX.

The Armies Around Petersburg.—All during the fall and winter of 1864-65, the two armies faced each other in the trenches around Petersburg, Va. Lee's army had been reduced by battle and disease to less than 30,000 effective men, but was compelled to guard a line of defenses that included both Richmond and Petersburg. Grant, on the other hand, could muster 200,000 men, and thousands of others were standing ready to take the places of those that were killed. It was becoming evident that Lee would sooner or later be compelled to yield to superior numbers

Fort Steadman.—Throughout the dreary fall and far into the winter, Grant continually drew his lines closer around Petersburg. Lee, with his dwindling army, contested every foot of the ground. About the middle of March, the two hostile lines, in some places, were not more than one hundred yards apart. Near the beginning of that month Grant seized and fortified Hare's Hill, a strong position about one hundred and fifty yards from that portion of Lee's lines that was under command of Major-general Bryan Grimes. From this fortified camp, called Fort Steadman, the Federals bombarded Petersburg, and raked

with shot and shell Lee's whole position on that side of the city. It was a time of extreme danger to the Confederate cause.

Capture and Recapture of Fort Steadman.—Lee determined to silence that stronghold of the enemy. Accordingly he ordered General Grimes to seize and destroy the works. For that task, Grimes assigned Brigadier-general Matt Ransom and Brigadier-general W. G. Lewis with their brigades of veteran North Carolinians. Ransom and Lewis had their lines in readiness early on the morning of March 25th. A storming party was sent ahead with axes to cut away the enemy's stockades and open up the way. In the darkness of the early morning, they approached the enemy's sentinels and disarmed them before they could give the alarm. The walls of the fort were cut away and the way opened by the time the attacking party arrived. Rushing over the broken walls the brave Carolinians took the enemy completely by surprise, killing and wounding a large number in the confusion and flight, and driving the survivors away in terror. Ransom held the fort a few hours, but later he was attacked by an overwhelming force and driven out after a stubborn resistance.

Lee's Lines Pierced.—On April 1st, Grant made a most determined assault upon Lee's lines, and broke through in several places. For a time there was extreme danger that the entire Confederate army would be captured within the fortifications at Petersburg. Just as the Federals broke through

the line, however, General Bryan Grimes with his division of North Carolinians rushed to the rescue, resisted every advance, and at length drove them back beyond the entrenchments. The result of this assault showed Lee that his lines could no longer be held. He, therefore, made preparation for an immediate retreat.

Retreat From Petersburg.—Lee began his retreat on the morning of April 2nd, intending to break away from his perilous position at Petersburg and join General Johnston in North Carolina. Before beginning the retreat Lee wired Johnston to move toward Greensboro, gathering all the reinforcements possible, and be ready to unite the two forces near Danville, Va. The Federals took possession of Richmond and Perersburg without resistance, and then followed Lee in rapid pursuit. On the retreat Grimes' division was placed in the rear, a post of danger as well as of honor. Once during the retreat the Federals pressed hard upon the rear guard of the Confederates. Grimes, perceiving it, turned upon them with the bayonet and pursued them a mile, killing and wounding a large number. General Lee rode back to meet Grimes as he returned from the pursuit and thanked him for his gallantry. As the veteran Tar Heels passed by, General Lee raised his hat and said, "God bless North Carolina."

The Retreat Cut Off.—On the morning of April 9th, it was learned that a large body of the enemy had gotten in front of Lee's army, and had cut off the retreat. In the emergency Grimes' divis-

ion was withdrawn from the rear and sent to the front to clear a way. Never did soldiers show more heroism. With the bayonet they charged a Federal force several times gerater in numbers and routed them. With the enemy fleeing before him, Grimes halted and sent back word that the way was open. While waiting he received orders to rejoin the main army. At first he refused to do so, and sent word that he could hold his position against any odds. In a short time he received another order, this time from General Lee himself, to retire at once. In obedience to that command, Grimes and his men fell back with regret.

The Last Charge.—As the Confederates fell back, a Federal command rushed out of the woods and began to fire upon them. Grimes ordered General William R. Cox with his brigade of North Carolinians to drive them back and to cover the retreat. Cox charged with the bayonet and cleared the field. The division then retreated in safety and rejoined the main body. Cox's charge was the last made, for when the division rejoined the main army, it became known that Lee had surrendered, and the long and bloody war was drawing to a close.

QUESTIONS.

1. What was the strength of Lee's army in the winter of 1864-65?
2. How far apart were the armies in March?
3. What place did Grant capture?
4. What did Lee resolve to do?
5. Who was selected to do this? What did the storming party do?
6. Tell about the capture and recapture of Fort Steadman.
7. What happened when Lee's lines were broken?
8. What was Lee's intention?
9. Relate an incident of the retreat.
10. How was the retreat cut off?
11. Relate particulars of Grimes' charge. Give particulars of the last charge.
12. What troops were last to cease fighting at Appomattox?

CHAPTER LXVII.

END OF THE WAR.

Johnston's Retreat Toward Greensboro.—After the battle of Bentonville there were no operations of any consequence for several days. Sherman's army rested at Goldsboro, and Johnston got between him and Raleigh, ready to oppose any movement toward that city. The Confederates, however, were too weak to risk another battle, but Sherman had been heavily reinforced about the last of March. Near the first of April, while he was watching Sherman, Johnston received orders from General Lee to hasten with his army to Danville, Va., where a junction of the two Confederate armies was expected to be made. In obedience to that command, he put his army in motion at once, and marched toward Greensboro, passing Raleigh and leaving it to the mercy of Sherman and his men.

An Embassy to Sherman.—As Raleigh was not fortified and had no defenders, Governor Vance thought it best to surrender the city without resistance, and ask the clemency of the conqueror. He, therefore, appointed as special commissioners to treat with Sherman Ex-governors Swain and Graham. They left Raleigh on a special train and met Sherman in Johnston County. As the

train approached the Federal lines, Governor Swain displayed a flag of truce. The Federal soldiers, however, disregarded the signal, and fired upon the train. Swain and Graham quickly surrendered and were taken as prisoners of war to the headquarters of General Sherman, where they were received kindly, but detained as prisoners until next day.

Governor Vance Escapes from Raleigh.—Meanwhile Governor Vance heard how the Federals captured the train bearing the peace commissioners, and, supposing that Sherman was going to be as heartless in North Carolina as he had been in South Carolina and Georgia, left Raleigh and joined Johnston's army then near Durham. Most of the State officials followed the governor's example and left the capital to its fate.

Incident in the City of Raleigh.—As the Federal cavalry under Kilpatrick marched into the city, the few Confederate soldiers there marched out. One daring soldier, Lieutenant Walsh, of Texas, stopped in front of the State-House, and waited until the Federal vanguard came within a short distance of him, then firing several times upon the advancing Federals he turned to flee. His horse fell as he turned, throwing the daring rider to the ground. Before he could regain his feet, the Federals were upon him. He was taken before General Kilpatrick, who ordered him hanged. The order was quickly obeyed and the body of the reckless Confederate was soon dangling from a limb.

News of Lee's Surrender.—As the Confederate army was marching toward Greensboro, the first news of Lee's surrender at Appomattox was received. At first Johnston did not believe it, but when he began to meet soldiers from Lee's army going home he could no longer doubt it. He pushed on to Greensboro, however, and there met President Davis and his cabinet, who had fled from Richmond. A conference of his leaders was held, and it was decided to surrender all the armies of the Confederacy and end the war.

Surrender of Johnston.—In accordance with that decision a message was sent to General Sherman, proposing peace. Sherman invited Johnston to meet him to settle upon terms. The two met near Durham, April 18th, and agreed upon conditions of peace. President Johnson, who had succeeded Lincoln, upon the assassination of the latter, did not approve the terms, and another meeting between Johnston and Sherman was held on April 24th and final conditions of surrender were signed, whereby all Confederate soldiers then in arms were paroled for the remainder of the war. The defeated army laid down their arms and returned to their homes. Thus the great civil struggle was nearing an end after four years of constant warfare. The sons of Dixie, who had beaten the Federals on so many battlefields, were compelled to yield to superior numbers. They gave up the fight with reluctance and parted with one another with sorrow. One soldier, who no doubt represented the feelings of a large number of his compatriots,

said, "We'll go home, make three crops, and try the Yankees again." The feeling was universal that they were not conquered, but overwhelmed.

Last Battle of the War.—For some months, an irregular warfare was being waged in Western North Carolina between the forces of Colonel Kirk, a renegade Confederate who had deserted to the Federals, with a few regiments of Federal soldiers and some Southern soldiers who had been sent to resist his advance toward the Piedmont section. Colonel J. R. Love was in command of the Confederate forces in Haywood County, and on May 8, 1865, he attacked and defeated a regiment of Federals at Waynesville. On May 10th, however, terms of peace were signed, by which the Federals were to leave that part of the State and the Confederate forces were to be disbanded. This closed hostilities in North Carolina, and the war had come to an end.

Feeling in the State.—In a few weeks the news of the surrender of Lee and Johnston went into every section of the State. In the remote mountain regions, however, where railroads and telegraph lines had not yet gone, the news was not received until a month later, and then was hardly believed. The first bearers of the news in Macon County were put in jail and held as spies or deserters, but were released shortly afterward when others came. Throughout the State there was a feeling of mingled sadness and joy. Patriotic North Carolinians were grieved that the cause of the Confederacy had gone down in defeat, but

there was a distinct feeling of relief that the struggle was over.

Losses in the War.—North Carolina had suffered terribly. The State had sent more than 120,000 men to the battlefield, and of these more than 40,000 had been killed or wounded. Many of the survivors had come home broken in health and died in a few years. Millions of dollars worth of property had been destroyed, and thousands of men, who had been well-to-do, were reduced to poverty. In battle, two Major-Generals, six Brigadier-Generals, thirty-four Colonels, and hundreds of other officers were killed. The financial condition of the State was deplorable, and famine was everywhere. North Carolina was prostrate at the feet of the conquerors.

QUESTIONS.

1. What orders did Johnston receive about the first of April?
2. Relate the story of the mission of the peace commissioners.
3. What did Governor Vance do?
4. Relate the story of Lieutenant Walsh.
5. What news reached Johnston on his way to Greensboro?
6. What did the conference of leaders at Greensboro decide?
7. Where did the surrender of Johnston take place?

8. Why were there two meetings between Johnston and Sherman?
9. Why did Johnston surrender?
10. What did one soldier say?
11. What was the feeling about the surrender?
12. Where was the last battle in North Carolina?
13. Tell something of the losses.
14. How many men did the State send to the war?

GENERAL REVIEW OF THE PERIOD OF THE UNION AND DISUNION—1789-1865.

Answer the following questions with each of the names given. Who? What?

Joel Lane
Benjamin Hawkins
James Glasgow
William McRae
Otway Burns
Archibald Murphy
E. B. Dudley
Robert Morrison
Louis Wilson
Calvin Graves
Calvin Wiley
Zebulon B. Vance
William Martin
William Lamb
J. J. Pettigrew
Matt Ransom
John Wood
Stephen Ramseur
William R. Cox
Hugh Williamson
Philip Terrell
Junaluska
Andrew Jackson
Bartlett Yancy
Yonaguska
Samuel Wait
Braxton Bragg

Dorothea Dix
Elisha Mitchell
Henry Wyatt
H. M. Shaw
Duncan McRae
Thos. M. Crossen
Bryan Grimes
Robert F. Hoke
Richard Gatling
Lieutenant Walsh
Hinton James
John Steele
John Reed
Johnson Blakely
Leonard Henderson
Nathaniel Macon
W. H. Thomas
Robert Paine
Santa Anna
James Dobbin
"Big Tom" Wilson
Charles Fisher
L. O'B. Branch
William D. Pender
Marble Nash Taylor
J. G. Martin
Captain Cooke
Thomas L. Clingman

Tell where each of the following places is and what was done there.

Meadow Creek
Buena Vista
Bethel
Fort Macon
Williamsburg
White Hall
Chancellorsville
Harrisburg
Shepherdsville
Cold Harbor
Fayetteville
Petersburg
Chapel Hill
Gold Hill
Mount Mitchell
Manassas
Federal Point
Seven Pines
Goldsboro
Hill's Bridge
Gettysburg
Edward's Ferry
Ream's Station
Bentonville
Appomattox
Durham
Vera Cruz
Fort Sumter
Fort Hatteras
Fort Fisher
Antietam
Plymouth
Boone's Mill
Cemetery Ridge
Spottsylvania
Kinston
Fort Steadman
Raleigh
Greensboro

PERIOD OF RECONSTRUCTION AND GROWTH—1865-1916

CHAPTER LXVIII.

COMING OF THE CARPET-BAGGER

The State Made a Military District.—Immediately following the surrender of Johnston, the State was in chaotic condition. Governor Vance had been made prisoner and was being held in Washington City. The other State officers were either prisoners or had fled from the capital. There was no government and no governor. President Johnson, however, early in June, 1865, by proclamation, formed the State into a military district and appointed General John M. Schofield governor. President Johnson was a native of Raleigh, but was a strong union man, and it was thought that he would be bitter toward the defeated South.

Holden Appointed Governor.—In a few weeks General Schofield was relieved of his duties as military governor, and William W. Holden, of Raleigh, was appointed to succeed him. Before the war Mr. Holden was a strong secessionist, and, in his paper, "The Sentinel," had taken strong grounds for Southern Independence. During the progress of the struggle, however, he became an advocate of peace at any price, and near the close

of the conflict took sides openly with the Union cause. He was now rewarded by the Federal government for his change of heart.

The Carpet-Baggers.—Soon after the close of the war, many northern men came to North Carolina to live. They were called "Carpet-Baggers," because, as it was said, they carried all they had about with them, and had no intention of becoming permanent residents. Some of them were Federal soldiers who remained in North Carolina after the close of hostilities, while others came from the North at a later date. For the most part, they were men who had failed in business, and were in search of means to repair their exhausted fortunes. Others were mere adventurers, who cared nothing for the people among whom they lived. A few, however, were good men, and came for the purpose of making homes here and assisting in the

The Scallawags.—With the help of the negroes, who were given the right of franchise in 1868, the carpet-baggers got control of affairs in North Carolina, and governed the State for several years. Some native white men united with them, also, and shared in the conduct of affairs of government. Among them were those who had been "buffaloes" during the war, or had united with the recent slaves for the sake of office. They were called "Scallawags," and were heartily despised by the best people of the State. The respectable element of the Republican party did not affiliate either with the carpet-baggers or the scallawags.

The Freedman's Bureau.—The Freedman's Bu-

reau, a benevolent institution, was established soon after the close of the war for the purpose of distributing food and clothing to the recently emancipated slaves until they could secure work. It was a useful institution, but many of the agents were unprincipled men, who encouraged the negroes in their idleness and instigated them against their former owners. The deluded blacks were encouraged by these men to expect social equality with the white people. They were also told that as soon as other matters could be adjusted, each negro would receive forty acres of land and a mule to begin with in making their fortunes.

Downfall of Governor Holden.—Governor Holden was at the head of affairs about six months. By order of President Johnson, who was born and reared in North Carolina, a State convention was called in the fall of 1865 to repeal the ordinance of secession, to repudiate the war debt, and to abolish slavery. Two of these had already been settled by the result of the war; but the convention met and did as the President had directed. The acts of the convention were then submitted to the people for ratification. The election was held in November and, to the surprise of almost everybody, the convention articles were voted down and Jonathan Worth, of Randolph County, was elected Governor over Holden, who was also a candidate.

Effect of the Election.—The result of the election in North Carolina was irritating to some of the Republican politicians in control at Washington City. The "unrepentant rebels" became a

favorite expression north of the Mason and Dixon line. The bloody shirt wavers of the North declared that the people of North Carolina were still in rebellion. Carpet-baggers and scallawags, too joined in the cry and tried to make it appear that the war had not ended, and that the Southern people were waiting only for a good opportunity to renew the conflict.

The Reconstruction Act.—Jonathan Worth was inaugurated January 1, 1866, and remained in office about eighteen months. In March, 1867, the Congress of the United States, composed of Northern men, for the South was not allowed to send representatives, passed what is called the Reconstruction Act, by which all civil government in the South was abolished and dividing the former Confederate States into military districts. Under this Act, Governor Worth was removed from office and North Carolina was united with South Carolina as a military district with General Daniel E. Sickles, of New York, as military governor. About the same time, Congress passed the Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution of the United States, by which the right of suffrage was given to the negro men of the South. On account of participation in the war the right of suffrage was taken from about twenty thousand white men in the State.

The Canby Constitution.—In the summer of 1867 General E. R. S. Canby succeeded Sickles as military governor. In October of the same year an election for State officers and a constitutional con-

vention was held, and after the election all the ballot boxes, containing the votes, were packed in box cars and sent to Charleston, S. C., to be counted. After some delay, General Canby made the announcement that William W. Holden had again been elected governor, and that the call for the constitutional convention had been carried. Thus the State government passed into the control of the radical element of the population. Early in January, 1868, the Convention met. It was composed of carpet-baggers, scallawags, a few conservative Republicans and Democrats, and some negroes. After being in session some weeks, a Constitution was framed and submitted to the people in April, and ratified by a big majority.

QUESTIONS.

1. Who were the Carpet-Baggers? The Scallawags?
2. Tell how General Schofield became governor?
3. How and when did William W. Holden become governor?
4. Why was there trouble with the negroes?
5. Tell how Holden was removed from office.
6. What effect in the North had the election of Governor Worth?
7. What Acts were passed by Congress?
8. Tell how General Canby held an election.
9. Who was elected?
10. What did the Convention do?

CHAPTER LXIX.

THE KU-KLUX KLAN.

Origin of the Ku-Klux.—In 1867, there sprang up in North Carolina a secret, oath-bound organization known as the **Ku-Klux Klan**, which had its origin in Tennessee about the close of 1866. Its growth was remarkable, and, in a year, it had spread throughout the South with a membership, it is said, of more than five hundred thousand.

The Loyal League.—The purpose of the Ku-Klux Klan was to oppose the workings of another secret order known as the Loyal League, which was organized in the South during the Civil War by partisans of the Federal government. After the war membership in the league was opened to negroes, and the native white men promptly left the order. The control of affairs in the league was, therefore, in the hands of negroes and their white allies from the North. The original purpose of the organization was lost sight of, and it was generally believed that the ignorant negroes were encouraged to commit acts of violence and thievery against the native white people. It is certain that theft, robbery, and arson very much increased during this time. Besides, many negroes in the large counties in what were known as the "black belt" became insolent to their late owners, and boasted

that the "bottom rail" had gotten on top. Thousands of them were idle and impudent, expecting the time to come when they would seize from the white people the allowance of forty acres of land and a mule that had been promised them by designing white men of the Loyal League and the Freedman's Bureau.

Operations of the Ku-Klux.—To protect their homes and property from the idle and vicious, the Ku-Klux began to terrorize the negroes. Sometimes certain members of the Klan disguised themselves and went to the homes of the worst negroes and frightened them by doing strange and mysterious things. Soon the imaginations of the former slaves produced some wonderful tales of the powers of the Ku-Klux. One negro declared that a Ku-Klux came to his house one night, went to the well, drank seven bucketfuls of water, and called for supper. Not getting the supper prepared quickly enough to suit his Ku-Kluxship, he took his head off his shoulders and threw it against the door, creating consternation among members of the family. Another said that a seven-eyed Ku-Klux came to his house, plucked out his seven eyes, and threw them at the door. Other stories equally fearful and ludicrous were told. Negroes therefore, stayed at home more closely at night and crime decreased.

The Ku-Klux and the Carpet-Baggers.—After the Ku-Klux had gotten the negroes somewhat under control by this method of terrorism, they turned their attention to the carpet-baggers

Anonymous letters pictured with skull and cross bones were sent to the worst of these allies of the worst negroes, telling them to leave the country immediately or worse things would follow. In some instances, carpet-baggers and scallawags were seized in the darkness of the night and whipped with rods. A scallawag by the name of Outlaw was hanged in Alamance County one night, supposedly by the Ku-Klux.

Murder of Stephens.—In Yanceyville, Caswell County, there lived a noted scallawag by the name of John W. Stephens, senator from that county in the General Assembly. He was hated by the native white people, because they believed him responsible for much of the bad feeling that existed between the negroes and the white people. One day, in 1870, during recess of court that was in session at Yanceyville, Stephens was murdered in an unoccupied room of the courthouse. It was done at midday while hundreds of people were in the building and yard, and yet it was never known who did it. The Ku-Klux were accused of it, but no testimony could ever be secured to convict anyone. The news of the murder produced a sensation in the State.

Alamance and Caswell Under Military Rule.—Upon the announcement of the murder of Stephens Governor Holden issued a proclamation declaring the people of Alamance and Caswell counties to be in a state of rebellion, and placed the two counties under military rule.

MAP STUDIES AND QUESTIONS.

1. Where is Yanceyville? Caswell County?
2. Give the origin and growth of the Ku-Klux Klan.
3. What was the object of the order?
4. What was the Loyal League? Its object?
5. What were many negroes guilty of?
6. Why were the negroes lawless?
7. How did the Ku-Klux Klan break up crime?
8. Relate some of the stories that were told of the Ku-Klux.
9. How did the Ku-Klux frighten the carpet-baggers?
10. Tell how Stephens was murdered.
11. Who did it?
12. Tell how Governor Holden acted.

CHAPTER LXX.

THE KIRK WAR.

Holden's "Standing Army."—Early in 1870, the General Assembly, made up largely at that time of carpet-baggers, scallawags, and negroes, passed an act authorizing the governor to organize a standing army, consisting of six regiments of infantry, three battalions of cavalry, and one battery of artillery. This warlike measure was introduced and passed at the suggestion of Governor Holden who declared that portions of the State were in rebellion against his authority and needed to be suppressed. Governor Holden called for volunteers, and soon men all over the State were drilling for the army. The companies thus raised, composed of white men, who were supporting the governor, were organized into regiments and battalions and massed at Raleigh. Some negro companies were also organized in some of the Eastern counties and held in reserve.

"Kirk's Lambs."—Governor Holden appointed George W. Kirk, of East Tennessee, to the command of his standing army. Kirk was generally disliked because of the part he had taken in the Civil War. At the beginning of the war, he had entered the Confederate service as a volunteer, but deserted to the Federals as soon as the cause

seemed lost. As a Federal raider in East Tennessee and Western North Carolina, he was guilty of many inhuman things. He was despised by the people of the country through which his army passed. Such was the man Governor Holden selected to command this army, which was afterward spoken of as "Kirk's Lambs."

"War" in Alamance.—After drilling his army until, as he thought, they could stand fire, Colonel Kirk, under orders from Governor Holden marched to Alamance County to put down the rebellion that was said to be in existence there. Arriving at Company Shops, now Burlington, Kirk halted for several weeks. He encountered no resistance, for the people were going ahead with their daily work, and it appeared to Kirk that if there was to be any war, it would have to be fought out by the governor's soldiers alone.

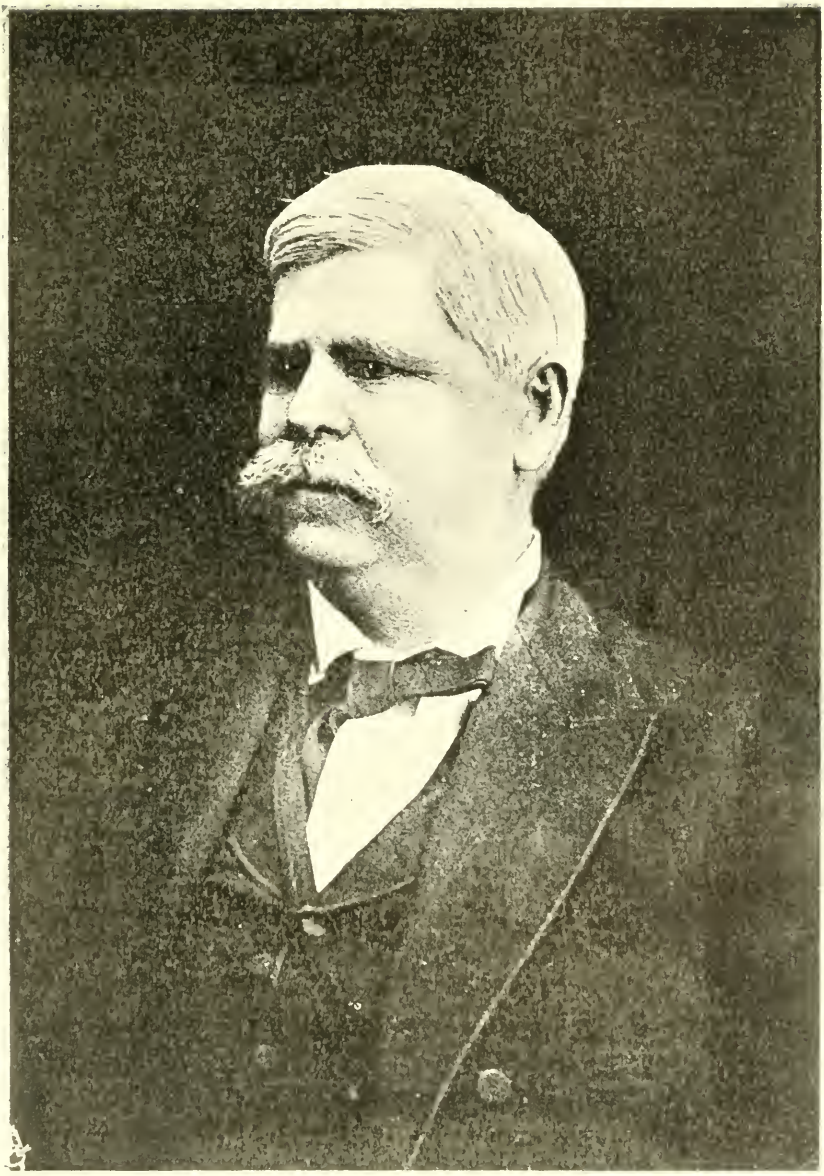
Arrest of Prominent Men.—After some weeks Kirk sent a squad of soldiers to the home of Adolphus Moore, a prominent citizen of Alamance County, and arrested him, and put him in jail at Graham. The only charge against him was that he was suspected of being a Ku-Klux. About the same time, he arrested John Kerr, of Caswell County, and Josiah Turner, of Hillsboro, who had been outspoken in their criticism of both Governor Holden and Colonel Kirk. Several other citizens were seized and confined in jail.

Capture of Captain Shotwell.—Captain Randolph Shotwell was editor, at that time, of a newspaper at Rutherfordton, and said, in his paper, some

severe things about Holden's army of scallawags, as he called them. Governor Holden ordered his arrest. Shotwell was seized and brought to Raleigh for trial before the Federal court on the charge of being a Ku-Klux. The charge Shotwell never denied, and he was, therefore, convicted and sentenced to hard labor for five years in the Albany penitentiary. He was taken to the northern prison in the fall of 1870.

Kirk Resists the Supreme Court.—Colonel Kirk continued his merciless "warfare" in Alamance and Caswell counties for two months before people generally realized what was going on. Finally the conservative men of the State began to take steps to resist him in his unlawful acts. Adolphus Moore, Josiah Turner, and John Kerr, while in prison, through their attorneys, appealed to Chief Justice Pearson for a writ of habeas corpus, whereupon Kirk was ordered to bring his prisoners to Raliegh for trial. Kirk refused to obey the order of Justice Pearson, giving as his reason that he was acting under orders from the governor.

An "Exhausted" Judiciary.—Kirk's refusal to obey brought the judicial and executive branches of the State government into conflict. Judge Pearson wrote to Governor Holden to know if Kirk was acting under orders. The governor replied that he was. Chief Justice Pearson then said that the power of the Supreme Court was exhausted. This was the first and only time in the history of North Carolina that an officer refused to obey an order of the Supreme Court.



ZEBULON BAIRD VANCE

QUESTIONS.

1. What act was passed in 1870?
2. Why did Governor Holden suggest the measure?
3. Who was Kirk? What was his reputation?
4. What were "Kirk's Lambs"?
5. Where did Kirk lead his army?
6. What did he find there?
7. What prominent men did he arrest there? Why?
8. Why was Captain Shotwell arrested?
9. What was done with him?
10. What effort was made to check Kirk?
11. Why did Kirk refuse to obey the Supreme Court?
12. Why did Judge Pearson say that the power of the Supreme Court was exhausted?

CHAPTER LXXI.

IMPEACHMENT OF HOLDEN.

General Ransom Comes to the Rescue.—Kirk became more violent when he found out that the effort to restrain him had failed. He arrested peaceable citizens, and, without any form of trial, confined them in dungeons, and refused to tell them of what they were accused. In this condition of affairs, intense excitement prevailed throughout the commonwealth. There seemed to be no power to protect innocent men from the tyranny of the governor. In this crisis, an appeal was made to the government of the United States. Hon. George W. Brooks, of Elizabeth City, had, a short while before, been appointed by President Grant Judge of the Federal Court for the district of North Carolina. General Matt Ransom visited Judge Brooks and brought to his attention the fact that Adolphus Moore, Josiah Turner, John Kerr, and other good citizens were being held in prison in defiance of the Supreme Court of the State. Judge Brooks was interested in Ransom's recital of wrongs and promised to see that the prisoners were given a fair trial.

Help Comes at Last.—Hurrying to Raleigh, Judge Brooks held a conference with the governor.

"You will plunge the State into civil war if you

release those men," declared Holden with emphasis.

"Let it come, then," answered Judge Brooks with warmth; "I shall see that those prisoners have a fair hearing if it takes the whole power of the United States government."

That day, August 6, 1870, Judge Brooks issued a peremptory order to Colonel Kirk to present his prisoners for trial at Salisbury, August 18th.

Meanwhile Governor Holden tried further to prevent Judge Brooks from carrying out his purpose. He wired President Grant to know if there was any way to check Brooks in his determination. After consulting Attorney-General Ackerman, the President telegraphed Governor Holden that he would have to yield to the demands of Judge Brooks.

Prisoners Set Free.—Judge Brooks opened court at Salisbury, August 18th, according to his published order. Colonel Kirk came into the courtroom attended by a bodyguard of armed men. Judge Brooks asked him why he came armed into the presence of the court. He replied that he was afraid of the people, and did not consider himself safe unless surrounded by the muskets of his men. He was ordered to dismiss his attendants and put himself under the protection of the court. Being asked for evidence against the prisoners, he replied that he had none, but was holding them only under orders of Governor Holden. Judge Brooks thereupon, ordered the release of the prisoners and

taxed Colonel Kirk with the cost. This ended the so-called "Kirk War."

Result of the Fall Elections.—In the fall elections of 1870, Governor Holden and his partisans went down in defeat. The Conservatives elected a majority in both branches of the General Assembly. Holden began now to fear the wrath of the people he had so grievously outraged. Even before the meeting of the Legislature, in December open threats were made that impeachment proceedings would be instituted against the governor for high crimes and misdemeanors in office.

Impeachment of the Governor.—Accordingly when the General Assembly met in December, a bill of impeachment was passed and Governo Holden was arraigned before the bar of the Senate to answer the charges preferred against him. Chief Justice Pearson of the Supreme Court was the presiding judge. The trial lasted three months, able lawyers on both sides contesting every point at issue. Finally, in March, 1871, Governor Holden was found guilty and deposed from office, and debarred forever from holding any public office in North Carolina. Thus for the first and only time in the history of the State a governor was impeached and removed from office. He was succeeded by Tod R. Caldwell, the lieutenant-governor.

South Front Street and Harbor, Wilmington, N. C.

QUESTIONS.

1. Tell what General Ransom did; what Judge Brooks did.
2. How did Governor Holden try to hinder Judge Brooks?
3. Tell something of their conversation.
4. Why did Kirk come into court armed?
5. What evidence did he have?
6. Why were the prisoners released?
7. How did the "Kirk War" end?
8. What was the result of the elections that year?
9. What charges were preferred against Governor Holden?
10. How long did the trial last?
11. What was the decision of the Senate?
12. What did the decision mean?

CHAPTER LXXII.

RETREAT OF THE CARPET-BAGGERS.

Vance Elected United States Senator.—Ex-Governor Vance was elected to the United States Senate by the General Assembly of 1871 to succeed Senator Abbott, a carpet-bagger. Vance had never been pardoned by the Federal government for the part he had taken in the Civil War, for he had refused to take the "Iron clad oath," which all officers of the Confederacy had to take before being restored to their rights as citizens. Those who refused to take this oath were disfranchised, and could neither vote nor hold office until they were pardoned by Congress, which process was called removing the "disabilities." Vance had never had his disabilities removed, and for that reason he was continued in office until the next session of the General Assembly, when General Matt Ransom was elected to the vacancy.

Death of the Siamese Twins.—In Mount Airy, Surry County, occurred January 17, 1874, the death of the famous Siamese twins, Chang and Eng Bunker. These two remarkable beings had been the wonder of the times. Their bodies were bound together at the breast and side by ligaments of flesh with such vtial connection that death would necessarily follow a surgical operation. Born in

Siam, they had traveled over the world, amassed a fortune by exhibiting themselves in shows, married, and settled down at Mount Airy. On the date mentioned both became suddenly ill, Chang dying first, followed in a few hours by his unfortunate brother.

Convention of 1875.—The General Assembly of 1874 called a convention to meet in Raleigh in September, 1875, for the purpose of revising the "Canby Constitution" of 1868. The election of delegates, in August, 1875, resulted in the choice of sixty Democrats, fifty-eight Republicans, and two independents. Some of the wisest and best men of the State were members, among them General T. L. Clingman, ex-Governor D. S. Reid, John Manning, Thomas J. Jarvis, Judge Tourgee, General Rufus Barringer, and Colonel O. H. Dockery. After an eventful session of a few weeks, the "Canby Constitution" was revised and made more nearly to suit the conditions then existing.

Election of County Commissioners.—One of the changes made in the constitution by the convention of 1875 was the method of electing county commissioners. The Canby Constitution required the election of all county officers by popular vote. As a consequence, in the large negro counties of the east, notably Halifax, Edgecombe, Craven, New Hanover, Northampton, and Warren, the ignorant negro vote had put into positions of trust incapable persons of their own race, or incompetent white men. To prevent a continuance of this misfortune, the convention put the selection of justices

of the peace in the hands of the General Assembly, and by statute it was ordered that in certain counties the justices of the peace elect the county commissioners.

Triumph of the Conservatives.—In 1876, Zebulon B. Vance, the famous war governor, was re-elected to the chief magistracy of North Carolina, defeating Judge Thomas Settle after a memorable campaign, in which the two candidates stumped the State together. By this time, most of the carpet-baggers, seeing that their sway had completely ended in North Carolina, took their departure into other States, as their brethren of former years had done. One of them, Judge Albion W. Tourgee, went North and wrote a book entitled "A Fool's Errand." His errand South was characterized by the title of his book. Other carpet-baggers followed Judge Tourgee's example, though they wrote no books. A few of them, however, remained in North Carolina, adapted themselves to the new condition, turned their attention to business, and assisted in the upbuilding of the State.

QUESTIONS.

1. Why was Vance not allowed his seat in the United States Senate? Who was elected to the vacancy?
2. What is meant by removing the disabilities?
3. Who were the Siamese Twins? Why were they famous?

4. Why was the convention of 1875 called? Name some members.
5. What change in the constitution is mentioned?
6. Tell of the election of 1876. What did the carpet-baggers do?
7. What was the "Fool's Errand?" When did reconstruction days end?

CHAPTER LXXIII.

INDUSTRIAL AND EDUCATIONAL PROGRESS

The State University Reorganized.—During reconstruction days, the usefulness of the State University was greatly impaired. The management was not acceptable to the people of the State. Patronage, therefore, was withheld until the doors of the ancient seat of learning were practically closed in 1870. In 1875, however, a new faculty was selected, and the university reopened in September of that year with sixty-nine students. In June, 1876, Dr. Kemp P. Battle was chosen president. Dr. Battle at once began a vigorous policy of expansion and growth. The next year showed a large increase in the number of students, and since that time progress has been steady. Dr. Battle resigned in 1891, and the presidency has been successively held since by George T. Winston, E. A. Alderman, F. P. Venable, and E. K. Graham.

Tobacco Industry.—Previous to the Civil War there was practically no tobacco industry in North Carolina. During the war, however, the attention of farmers began to be turned to its cultivation, and in the last year of the struggle, some smoking tobacco began to be manufactured, in a small way, at Durham Station, on the North Carolina Rail-

road. That was the beginning of the tobacco manufacturing in the State. Durham was a mere hamlet at the time, but has since become a city of importance. Among the men who have made Durham famous are W. T. Blackwell, J. S. Carr, and Washington Duke, and his sons. Immense fortunes have been accumulated by these men and others who have engaged in the same business. Other towns have grown up under like influences, some of them rivalling, or even surpassing, Durham. Winston-Salem, Greensboro, Rocky Mount, Wilson, Reidsville, and Burlington are examples of thrifty municipalities that have grown up because of the tobacco industry.

The Tilden and Hayes Election.—In the fall of 1876, the people of North Carolina became greatly excited over the result of the presidential election of that year. The candidates for president were Samuel J. Tilden, Democrat, and Rutherford B. Hayes, Republican. For two or three days after the election, it was generally conceded that Mr. Tilden had been elected. In a few days, however, the Republicans began to claim that frauds had been committed in South Carolina, Florida, and Louisiana, and that those States should be counted for Hayes instead of Tilden. That claim produced intense excitement, for it was believed that President Grant was back of it with the bayonets of the United States army. It seemed certain that civil war would result, for both sides stoutly claimed the election. Washington City was garrisoned by soldiers, and men all over the country

were threatening to take up arms. Finally Congress appointed a Commission of fifteen members to count the votes in the contested States. This commission, composed of seven Democrats and eight Republicans, by a strict party vote, decided that the votes of the contested states should all be counted for Hayes, giving him a majority of one in the electoral college. Tilden and his friends yielded their contention for the sake of peace, and the danger of civil war was averted.

Treatment of the Colored Race.—When the conservative element of the white people of North Carolina resumed control of all branches of the State government, in 1877, a policy of forbearance and kindness was begun toward the negro race. The negro men, recently in slavery but by the result of the war given liberty, had joined the carpet-baggers and scallawags, and had voted almost solidly and steadily against what seemed the best interest of all the people. Upon the overthrow, however, of the carpet-bag government, the white people showed no hostility toward the colored race. During the administration of Governor Vance, who was elected in 1876, and his successor, Governor T. J. Jarvis, large sums of money were appropriated by the General Assembly for the education of negro children and for the care of the insane among them. Four Normal Schools for the education and training of negro teachers were established at different points in the State, and a College of Agriculture and Mechanic Arts was opened for negro students at Greensboro. An insane asylum

for colored patients was built at Goldsboro, and other schools and charities were supported by the State government.

Settlement of Old Debts.—As the bonds issued by the State before the Civil War began to fall due, it was seen that some readjustment of financial condition was necessary. Reconstruction days had left the State in a worse financial condition than the war had, and there was no money with which to pay the bonds. There was no thought, however, of repudiating them, and the creditors were not unreasonable. A settlement was finally agreed upon by which new bonds were issued and the old ones cancelled. The bonds that were issued during reconstruction days, called Special Tax bonds, by which money was gotten by the boodlers among the carpet-baggers largely for their own use, were repudiated in 1877 by Act of the General Assembly.

Assassination of President Garfield.—On July 2, 1881, President Garfield was shot by an assassin in the Union Station in Washington City. The news of the crime, the second of the kind in the history of the United States, was received with sorrow all over the country. In North Carolina memorial services were held in almost every town in honor of the martyred President, who died of the wound in September.

QUESTIONS.

1. Why did the patronage of the University de-decline in Reconstruction days?
2. Tell how the institution has been redeemed.
3. When did the tobacco industry begin in North Carolina?
4. Tell how some towns have grown.
5. What caused the excitement in 1876?
6. Who was elected President that year? How was the contest decided?
7. What policy was pursued toward the colored race in 1877?
8. How did the white people treat the negroes? Give some examples.
9. How were the old debts against the State settled?
10. What was the feeling about the reconstruction bonds?
11. How did North Carolina express her sorrow for President Garfield?

CHAPTER LXXIV.

EVENTS AT HOME AND ABROAD.

The Farmers' Alliance.—About 1891 a secret society called the Farmers' Alliance was organized, and in a short while nearly all the farmers of the State had become members. At first the organization was strictly non-political, having for its object the improvement of agricultural conditions. The next year, however, the purpose was lost sight of in the excitement of the presidential election, and the Farmers' Alliance became a political organization. From it came the Populist party, which combined or fused with the Republican party, in 1894 and 1896, thereby getting control of the Legislature, and all departments of the State government, electing Daniel L. Russell, of Wilmington, governor. A Populist, Marion Butler, and a Republican, J. C. Pritchard, were elected to the Senate of the United States.

Destruction of the Maine.—For some years the people of Cuba had been engaged in a war with Spain in an effort to gain their independence. In the latter part of 1897, the Cubans appealed to the United States for aid, but our government did not see fit to respond, although nearly everybody in the United States wished to see Cuba free. About the first of February, 1898, however, President

McKinley ordered the battleship Maine to Havana, in order to watch the progress of events there, and to protect American interests. On February 15th while lying at anchor in the harbor of Havana, not far from the city, the battleship was blown up by a submarine mine, resulting in the complete destruction of the ship and the death of two hundred and sixty-six American sailors. It was believed all over the United States that Spanish officers in Havana had placed the mine and blown up the ship. The war feeling ran high. Congress, after some delay, declared war against Spain on April 25, 1898. The battle cry of the Americans was, "Remember the Maine."

Duration of the War.—The war was short, beginning in April and ending in August, the same year. Some great things were done, however, in that short time. Commodore George Dewey, on May 1st, destroyed a Spanish fleet at Manila in the Philippine Islands without loss to the American fleet. On May 11th, the torpedo boat Winslow ran into the harbor of Cardenas and fired upon the Spanish batteries, but was in turn disabled by the enemy and several American sailors killed, Ensign Worth Bagley, of North Carolina, being the first to fall, our State thus giving the first life in the war. Commodore Schley, on July 3rd, completely destroyed the Spanish fleet at Santiago with practically no damage to his own fleet. About the same time the American army made a landing in Cuba, defeated the Spanish in the battles of El Caney and San Juan Hill, and captured the city

of Santiago. Spain thereupon begged for peace, agreeing a acknowledge the independence of Cuba, and to surrender to the United States the Philippine Islands, Porto Rico and Guam. The treaty of peace was signed in October.

North Carolina Soldiers.—North Carolina furnished two thousand men for the war, and would have supplied a hundred thousand had they been needed. While the fighting was going on in Cuba the North Carolina boys were held in camp in Florida, ready to go to the seat of war at any time. In November, after the war had ended, they were ordered to Havana, and were the first American soldiers to enter that city.

The Wilmington Revolution.—On November 10 1898, a notable thing happened in Wilmington. The fusion Legislature of 1897, by special legislation, put the city largely under negro rule. The mayor and the chief of police were white men, but there were negro aldermen and policemen. As a consequence the government of the city was badly carried on, and lawlessness prevailed. The conservative white people endured that condition of affairs until "The Record," a negro newspaper of the city, made some insulting remarks about the white women of the State. That raised a storm and the white men of the city in mass meeting declared that they would submit to negro rule no longer. They also declared that the negro editor, who wrote the offensive language, should be banished from the city, and the newspaper plant removed. Twenty-four hours were given the negro

editor to depart with his goods. At the end of that time a hundred men, under the leadership of Colonel A. M. Waddell, marched, with Winchester rifles, to the doomed printing office, destroyed the printing presses, and burned the building to the ground. The editor had fled.

As the white men were returning to their homes, after the destruction of the printing plant, they were fired upon by some negroes who had collected on the streets. The white men returned the fire, and several negroes were killed or wounded. The news of the riot spread, and the whites rushed to arms all over the city. The negroes became panic-stricken, and about five thousand fled from the city and hid in the swamps and forests around.

The Revolution Completed.—After the riot was over the incompetent negro and white officers of the city were forced to resign, one by one, and competent white men chosen in their places. Colonel A. M. Waddell was elected mayor, a conservative board of aldermen installed, negro policemen discharged, and most of the negroes who had fled from the city returned. Thus the revolution was at an end. Since that time Wilmington has greatly prospered.

Changed Conditions.—In that year, 1898, the election throughout the State resulted in a crushing defeat of the fusion forces and the Democrats regained control of affairs. The Legislature of 1899 repealed the special laws by which negroes had gotten control of many eastern towns, and in that way banished negro rule forever from the

State. The same Legislature passed what is known as the "educational amendment" to the constitution.

QUESTIONS.

1. What was the purpose of the Farmers' Alliance?
2. How did it fail in its object?
3. What was the political complexion of the Legislature in 1897?
4. What disaster occurred at Havana February 15, 1898?
5. What was the cause of that disaster?
6. When was war declared?
7. Give a brief account of the principal events.
8. Who was the first man killed in the war?
9. What were the terms of peace?
10. How long did the war last?
11. Tell what the North Carolina soldiers did in the war.
12. What was the cause of the Wilmington revolution?
13. What did the mass meeting of citizens do?
14. Give an account of the destruction of the "Record" office and the riot that followed.
15. How did a change of city officials take place?
16. Who was chosen mayor?
17. How did the election of 1898 result?
18. What was done by the Legislature of 1899?

CHAPTER LXXV.

EDUCATIONAL AWAKENING

Revival in Education.—During the administration of Governor Jarvis, from 1879 to 1885, there was a general educational awakening. Interest in the public schools, which had lagged during reconstruction days, was renewed; and improvements were begun which brought about an upheaval in the educational life of the people. Previous to 1880 only a few towns had what might be termed fair educational advantages, but during the six years of Jarvis's administration and the four of Scales's a dozen or more towns voted a special tax, and organized a system of public graded schools. Besides, many private schools of note sprang up in various parts of the State.

State Schools.—About the same time, or soon thereafter, several institutions for the higher education of men and women were established under the immediate control of the State. The North Carolina College of Agriculture and Mechanic Arts was authorized by the Legislature of 1887. Buildings were erected in West Raleigh in 1889, and the school opened the same year. In 1891, the Normal and Industrial College for women was opened at Greensboro. Both of these State schools have had a constantly increasing patronage. An asylum for

Wrightsville Turnpike

the deaf and dumb was built at Morganton in 1894.

Removal of Trinity College.—Trinity College, the Methodist school for men, was chartered in 1853, and located in Randolph County. There it went through periods of adversity and prosperity until 1892, when it was removed to Durham. New buildings were erected for the school in that city and the institution took on new life. It has received in recent years several large gifts from ardent friends, and is now the most heavily endowed college in the State.

Other Schools.—Besides those already mentioned other schools of high grade for men and women have been established. There are now more than a dozen colleges for the education of women and about half as many for men. In 1907 the State authorized the building of the East Carolina Teachers' Training School at Greenville. State public high schools have been established in every county, and graded schools are found in every town.

The "Educational Governor."—In the August election of 1900, an Educational amendment to the State Constitution, denying the right of suffrage, after 1908, to all males who cannot read and write, was submitted to a vote of the people and carried by over fifty thousand majority. At the same time the following State officers were chosen: Charles B. Aycock, governor; W. D. Turner, lieutenant-governor; J. Bryan Grimes, secretary of state; R. D. Gilmer, attorney-general; B. F. Dixon, auditor; Benjamin R. Lacy, treasurer; T. F. Toon, superintendent of public instruction. The election that

year brought the question of education prominently before the public, and the verdict was for better schools. Aycock's administration is noted for an educational revival throughout the State. A four months' school was secured in every district; rural libraries were established in almost every county; the State schools were greatly improved in equipment, and larger appropriations than ever before were voted them. Governor Aycock was so enthusiastic in the support of all measures for the public schools that he is called the "educational governor."

The Educational Campaign.—Early in 1902 Superintendent of Public Instruction Toon died, and was succeeded by Professor J. Y. Joyner, who, at the time of his appointment, occupied the chair of English in the Normal and Industrial College. Under the direction of Mr. Joyner an educational campaign committee was named and headquarters opened at Raleigh, from which speakers and literature were sent out into every section of the State. As a result of these efforts special tax districts were increased from thirty in 1900 to more than three hundred in 1916. During the same time about one thousand rural libraries were opened in districts where none had been before. This committee was composed of the following: J. Y. Joyner, chairman; Charles D. McIver, Governor Charles B. Aycock, and E. C. Brooks.

Consolidation of Districts.—Another important result of the educational awakening is the consolidation of public school districts. More than

one thousand small ones were abolished and larger ones occupying the same territory establsihed in their stead. Consequently, better school houses have been built, a larger number of pupils enrolled in each school, and better teachers employed. A school-house loan fund was created, and many districts have been aided in the erection of suitable buildings.

QUESTIONS.

1. When did the educational awakening begin?
2. What effect had it upon the public schools?
3. What State schools were established?
4. Tell about the removal of Trinity College?
5. How many schools for the higher education of women are there in the State? For men?
6. Who began the educational campaign of 1902?
7. What was the object of the campaign committee? Some results?
8. What officers were elected in 1900?
9. Who was the "educational governor"?
10. What advantage is there in the consolidation of districts?
11. What is the school-house loan fund?
12. How many local tax districts in the State?
13. How many rural libraries?

CHAPTER LXXVI.

MOST RECENT TIMES.

Progress of Affairs.—Since 1898, general prosperity has spread over the State. Business has uniformly increased in volume; agriculture has materially developed and enlarged; cotton and furniture factories have been built in almost every community; swamp lands have been drained, thereby adding thousands of square miles of arable to the cultivated area; facilities for travel and trade have greatly improved; relations between capital and labor are cordial; towns and cities are rapidly growing; and rural districts are being made delightful by the introduction of the rural mail routes, the telephone, the consolidation of school districts, and the gradual extension of the electric light and water systems.

Governor Glenn and the Bondholders.—In the fall election of 1904, Robert B. Glenn was elected governor, with Francis D. Winston, lieutenant-governor, and James Y. Joyner, superintendent of public instruction. The other State officials were the same as in 1900. Early in Governor Glenn's administration, it became known that a bondholding syndicate in New York City had bought several hundred thousand dollars worth of North Carolina bonds of reconstruction days, which had been

repudiated by the General Assembly. This syndicate, in order to test the validity of the bonds, presented some of them to the State of South Dakota, and prevailed upon that State to enter suit against North Carolina to recover their full value. Suit was begun and finally decided by the Supreme Court of the United States in favor of South Dakota, and judgment was given against North Carolina for the amount involved. As soon as the decision was rendered, the bondholders presented the remaining bonds in their possession for payment. Governor Glenn, in a special message to the General Assembly of 1905, urged that a final settlement be made with the syndicate. Acting upon this advice, a committee was appointed to make the settlement, and, after a thorough investigation, the recommendation was made that the State accept a compromise offered by the holders of the bonds. By the payment of about three hundred thousand dollars by the State the bonds were cancelled and a long controversy settled.

Trouble With the Railroads.—In 1907, the General Assembly passed an act reducing passenger fares on all railroads in the State to two and a quarter cents a mile. The four great railroad systems, the Soutern, the Atlantic Coast Line, the Seaboard Air Line, and the Norfolk Southern, refused to obey the law, and appealed to Judge Jeter C. Pritchard of the Circuit Court of the United States for an injunction restraining the State from enforcing the law. The injunction was granted, but Governor Glenn declared his purpose to enforce

the law, and proceeded to arrest several ticket agents for selling fares at a higher rate than the law allowed. Intense excitement prevailed for several weeks, for it seemed that an armed conflict would occur between the State and Federal authorities. Happily, however, the dispute was compromised, the General Assembly placing the rate at two and a half cents a mile, which was satisfactory to the railroads.

The Election of 1908.—The following State officers were elected in 1908: William W. Kitchin, Governor; William C. Newland, Lieutenant-Governor; J. Bryan Grimes, Secretary of State; Benj. F. Dixon, Auditor; Benj. R. Lacy, Treasurer; T. W. Bickett, Attorney-General; James Y. Joyner, Superintendent of Public Instruction. Auditor Dixon died in 1910, and W. P. Wood, of Randolph County, succeeded him. At a special election in May of the same year, State-wide prohibition of the liquor traffic was voted by a large majority. The administration of Governor Kitchin was marked by general advancement in business and social conditions.

Development of Literature.—North Carolina has produced no great writers, but many clever ones have lived within her borders. In colonial times there were many talented men in the province, although the masses of the people were uneducated. Among the writers of that period were John Lawson and Dr. John Brickell, both of whom wrote treatises on the history and natural resources of the colony; Judge Maurice Moore, who was the

author of the "Atticus Letters," a severe criticism of Governor Tryon; and Colonel Thomas Pollock, who has left much valuable information in his letter book. Soon after the Revolution, the following became prominent as writers: Judge James Iredell, who published a learned treatise on law; Dr. Hugh Williamson, who published a "History of North Carolina"; Judge Francis Xavier Martin, who also published a history of the State; and Joseph Sewell Jones, whose "Defense of the Revolutionary History of North Carolina" and "My Log Cabin in the Prairie" are readable and interesting. About the middle of the nineteenth century, there was considerable activity in history writing. Dr. Francis L. Hawkes and Rev. E. W. Caruthers contributed valuable books on the history of the State, as did also Colonel John H. Wheeler. William A. Graham, David L. Swain, and Drs. Hubbard and Foote contributed addresses and sketches on the same subject. During the same period Judge William Gaston published his celebrated ode, "The Old North State," and Dr. Calvin H. Wiley compiled "The North Carolina Reader." A little later, William B. Harrell published the beautiful poem, "Ho! for Carolina." In later times, following the Civil War, John W. Moore and Mrs. Cornelia P. Spencer published histories of the State, which were used for many years in the public schools. Among the poets may be mentioned Theophilus H. Hill, Edwin W. Fuller, John Henry Bonar, John Charles McNeil, Mrs. Mary Bayard Clark, Henry Jerome Stockard, and Benj. F. Sledd.

In the field of fiction, the most noted are Mrs. Frances Fisher, Hinton Helper, Thomas Dixon, and Sidney Porter (O. Henry). Besides those mentioned, there have been others who have made reputations in the departments of poetry, history, law, and fiction. The monumental work of the Colonial and State Record by Colonel William L. Saunders and Judge Walter Clark is invaluable. "The Biographical History of North Carolina," by Samuel A. Ashe, is a valuable work in ten volumes. "The History of North Carolina," in two volumes by the same author, is also a work of research and note. Clarence Poe, D. H. Hill, R. D. W. Connor, W. J. Peele, De Lancy Haywood, and W. L. Poteat have also greatly enriched the literature of the State by writings of note.

Patriotic Societies.—Until comparatively recent times, no organized effort was made to preserve the historic relics of the State, or to put on record the achievements of the past. As a people, North Carolinians have been diligent in making history, but have been content with letting notable deeds go unrecorded. Within the present generation, however, patriotic women through their societies, "Daughters of the American Revolution," "Daughters of the Revolution," "Colonial Dames," and "Daughters of the Confederacy," are keeping alive in times of peace the memory of those who performed deeds of heroism on the battlefields. The North Carolina Hall of History and the Historical Commission, that are now doing so much to re-

cover the history of the State, are largely the result of work done in these societies.

Statues and Monuments.—North Carolinians have never been monument builders. While not wholly indifferent to the deeds of their ancestors, they have neglected to portray them in bronze or marble. Even the niche in the Capitol at Washington, reserved for busts of two famous North Carolinians, has not been filled. Within the last few years, however, a new spirit has begun to be felt, and there is now a more pronounced disposition to erect monuments. There is a monument to the Signers of the Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence at Charlotte, one to Zebulon E. Vance at Asheville, another to the Soldiers and Sailors of the Confederacy at Raleigh, and one to Vance at Raleigh. Besides these, other monuments of less note have been erected at other places.

Present Status of Affairs.—In the fall election of 1912, Locke Craig, of Asheville, was chosen Governor, and E. L. Daughtridge, of Rocky Mount Lieutenant-Governor. The other officers were the same as in 1908. Governor Craig's administration has been marked by great industrial development. Agricultural interests have been stressed, and, as a result, rural life is greatly enriched financially, socially, educationally, and religiously. Many of the city comforts and conveniences have been extended to country districts, and the cry, "Back to the farm," is persistent.

Conclusion.—By comparison with other States it will be seen that North Carolina has always been

among the foremost in the cause of liberty. She was the first to make at Alamance armed resistance to royal rule; first to declare for independence; first to win a victory in the Revolution; first at Bethel; farthest to the front at Gettysburg and Chickamauga; last at Appomattox; and first at Cardenas. No State can claim a record that shows more devotion to principle, or a people more conservative and heroic. No one can tell what the future will be, but the past is secure, and that is glorious.

QUESTIONS.

1. What evidences of progress are there?
2. Give an account of the South Dakota case and what followed. What settlement with the bondholders was made?
3. Give the incidents of the passenger-rate controversy.
4. Name the writers and their works of colonial times; soon after the Revolution; about the middle of the nineteenth century; following the Civil War; most recent times.
5. Who wrote histories of the State? Songs? Poetry? Novels? Other writers?
6. Name some patriotic societies; some monuments.
7. What has been done to benefit country life?
8. Give the thought in conclusion.

GENERAL REVIEW OF THE PERIOD OF RECONSTRUCTION AND RECOVERY 1865-1916

Give a brief statement about each of the following:

William W. Holden
Jonathan Worth
John W. Stephens
Josiah Turner
George W. Brooks
Worth Bagley
George W. Kirk
Adolphus Moore
John Kerr
Randolph Shotwell
Tod R. Caldwell
Chas. D. McIver

IMPORTANT EVENTS

Give a brief statement about each of the following events:

Canby's Election
Origin of the Ku-Klux
The Kirk War
Convention of 1875
The Wilmington Revolution.
Origin of the Loyal League
Murder of Stephens
Impeachment of Holden
Destruction of the Maine
Passenger-rate Controversy

APPENDIX I.

CONSTITUTION

of the

STATE OF NORTH CAROLINA.

PREAMBLE.

We, the people of the State of North Carolina, grateful to Almighty God, the Sovereign Ruler of nations, for the preservation of the American Union, and the existence of our civil, political and religious liberties, and acknowledging our dependence upon Him for the continuance of those blessings to us and our posterity, do, for the more certain security thereof, and for the better government of this State, ordain and establish this Constitution:

ARTICLE I.

Declaration of Rights.

That the great, general and essential principles of liberty and free government may be recognized and established, and that the relations of this State to the Union and government of the United States, and those of the people of this State to the rest of

the American people may be defined and affirmed, we do declare:

Section 1. That we hold it to be self-evident that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, the enjoyment of the fruits of their own labor, and the pursuit of happiness.

Sec. 2. That all political power is vested in, and derived from, the people; all government of right originates from the people, is founded upon their will only, and is instituted solely for the good of the whole.

Sec. 3. That the people of this State have the inherent, sole and exclusive right of regulating the internal government and police thereof, and of altering and abolishing their Constitution and form of government whenever it may be necessary for their safety and happiness; but every such right should be exercised in pursuance of law and consistently with the Constitution of the United States.

Sec. 4. That this State shall ever remain a member of the American Union; that the people thereof are part of the American nation; that there is no right on the part of the State to secede, and that all attempts, from whatever source or upon whatever pretext, to dissolve said Union, or to sever said nation, ought to be resisted with the whole power of the State.

Sec. 5. That every citizen of the State owes paramount allegiance to the Constitution and gov-

ernment of the United States, and that no law or ordinance of the State in contravention or subversion thereof can have any binding force.

Sec. 6. The State shall never assume or pay, or authorize the collection of any debt or obligation, express or implied, incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; nor shall the General Assembly assume or pay, or authorize the collection of any tax to pay either directly or indirectly, expressed or implied, any debt or bond incurred, or issued, by authority of the Convention of the year one thousand eight hundred and sixty-eight, nor any debt or bond incurred, or issued, by the Legislature of the year one thousand eight hundred and sixty-eight, either at its special session of the year one thousand eight hundred and sixty-eight, or at its regular sessions of the years one thousand eight hundred and sixty-eight and one thousand eight hundred and sixty-nine and one thousand eight hundred and sixty-nine and one thousand eight hundred and seventy, except the bonds issued to fund the interest on the old debt of the State, unless the proposing to pay the same shall have first been submitted to the people, and by them ratified by the vote of a majority of all the qualified voters of the Stae, at a regular election held for that purpose.

Sec. 7. No man or set of men are entitled to exclusive or separate emoluments or privileges from the community but in consideration of public services.

Sec. 8. The legislative, executive and supreme judicial powers of the government ought to be forever separate and distinct from each other.

Sec. 9. All power of suspending laws, or the execution of laws, by any authority, without the consent of the representatives of the people, is injurious to their rights, and ought not to be exercised.

Sec. 10. All elections ought to be free.

Sec. 11. In all criminal prosecutions every man has the right to be informed of the accusation against him and to confront the accusers and witnesses with other testimony, and to have counsel for his defence, and not be compelled to give evidence against himself, or to pay costs, jail fees or necessary witness fees of the defence, unless found guilty.

Sec. 12. No person shall be put to answer any criminal charge, except as hereinafter allowed but by indictment, presentment or impeachment.

Sec. 13. No person shall be convicted of any crime but by the unanimous verdict of a jury of good and lawful men in open court. The Legislature may, however, provide other means of trial for petty misdemeanors, with the right of appeal.

Sec. 14. Excessive bail should not be required nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel or unusual punishments inflicted.

Sec. 15. General warrants, whereby any officer or messenger may be commanded to search suspected places, without evidence of the act committed, or to seize any person or persons not

named, whose offence is not particularly described and supported by evidence, are dangerous to liberty, and ought not to be granted.

Sec. 16. There shall be no imprisonment for debt in this State, except in cases of fraud.

Sec. 17. No person ought to be taken, imprisoned or disseized of his freehold, liberties or privileges, or outlawed or exiled, or in any manner deprived of his life, liberty or property but by the law of the land.

Sec. 18. Every person restrained of his liberty is entitled to a remedy to inquire into the lawfulness thereof, and to remove the same, if unlawful; and such remedy ought not to be denied or delayed.

Sec. 19. In all controversies at law respecting property, the ancient mode of trial by jury is one of the best securities of the rights of the people, and ought to remain sacred and inviolable.

Sec. 20. The freedom of the press is one of the great bulwarks of liberty, and therefore ought never to be restrained, but every individual shall be held responsible for the abuse of the same.

Sec. 21. The privileges of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended.

Sec. 22. As political rights and privileges are not dependent upon, or modified by property, therefore no property qualification ought to affect the right to vote or hold office.

Sec. 23. The people of the State ought not to be taxed, or made subject to the payment of any impost or duty, without the consent of themselves

or their representatives in General Assembly, freely given.

Sec. 24. A well regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed; and, as standing armies in time of peace are dangerous to liberty, they ought not to be kept up, and the military should be kept under strict subordination to, and governed by, the civil power. Nothing herein contained shall justify the practice of carrying concealed weapons, or prevent the Legislature from enacting penal statutes against said practice.

Sec. 25. The people have a right to assemble together to consult for their common good, to instruct their representatives, and to apply to the Legislature for redress of grievance. But secret political societies are dangerous to the liberties of a free people, and should not be tolerated.

Sec. 26. All men have a natural and unalienable right to worship Almighty God according to the dictates of their own conscience, and no human authority should, in any case whatever, control or interfere with the rights of conscience.

Sec. 27. The people have the right to the privilege of education, and it is the duty of the State to guard and maintain that right.

Sec. 28. For redress of grievances, and for amending and strengthening the laws, elections should be often held.

Sec. 29. A frequent recurrence to fundamental

principles is absolutely necessary to preserve the blessings of liberty.

Sec. 30. No hereditary emoluments, privileges or honors ought to be granted or conferred in this State.

Sec. 31. Perpetuities and monopolies are contrary to the genius of a free State, and ought not to be allowed.

Sec. 32. Retrospective laws, punishing acts committed before the existence of such laws, and by them only declared criminal, are oppressive unjust and incompatible with liberty, wherefore no ex post facto law ought to be made. No law taxing retrospectively sales, purchases, or other acts previously done, ought to be passed.

Sec. 33. Slavery and involuntary servitude otherwise than for crime whereof the parties shall have been duly convicted, shall be, and are hereby, forever prohibited within the State.

Sec. 34. The limits and boundaries of the State shall be and remain as they now are.

Sec. 35. All courts shall be open; and every person for an injury done him in his lands, goods, person or reputation, shall have remedy by due course of law, and right and justice administered without sale, denial or delay.

Sec. 36. No soldier shall in time of peace be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner; nor in time of war but in a manner prescribed by law.

Sec 37. This enumeration of rights shall not be construed to impair or deny others retained by

the people; and all powers not herein delegated remain with the people.

ARTICLE II.

Legislative Department.

Section 1. The legislative authority shall be vested in two distinct branches, both dependent on the people, to-wit: A Senate and a House of Representatives.

Sec. 2. The Senate and House of Representatives shall meet biennially on the first Wednesday after the first Monday in January next after their election; and when assembled shall be denominated the General Assembly. Neither House shall proceed upon public business unless a majority of all the members are actually present.

Sec. 3. The Senate shall be composed of fifty Senators, biennially chosen by ballot.

Sec. 4. The Senate Districts shall be so altered by the General Assembly, at the first session after the return of every enumeration by order of Congress, that each Senate District shall contain, as near as may be, an equal number of inhabitants excluding aliens and Indians not taxed, and shall remain unaltered until the return of another enumeration, and shall at all times consist of contiguous territory; and no country shall be divided in the formation of a Senate District, unless such county shall be equitably entitled to two or more Senators.

Sec. 5. The House of Representatives shall be

composed of one hundred and twenty Representatives, biennially chosen by ballot, to be elected by the counties respectively, according to their population, and each county shall have at least one Representative in the House of Representatives, although it may not contain the requisite ratio of representation; this apportionment shall be made by the General Assembly at the respective times and periods when the districts for the Senate are hereinbefore directed to be laid off.

Sec. 6. In making the apportionment in the House of Representatives, the ratio of representation shall be ascertained by dividing the amount of the population of the State, exclusive of that comprehended within those counties which do not severally contain the one hundred and twentieth part of the population of the State, by the number of Representatives, less the number assigned to such counties; and in ascertaining the number of the population of the State, aliens and Indians not taxed shall not be included. To each county containing the said ratio, and not twice the said ratio there shall be assigned one Representative; to each county containing twice but not three times the said ratio, there shall be assigned two Representatives, and so on progressively, and then the remaining Representatives shall be assigned severally to the counties having the largest fractions.

Sec. 7. Each member of the Senate shall not be less than twenty-five years of age, shall have resided in the State as a citizen two years, and shall have usually resided in the district for which

he is chosen one year immediately preceding his election.

Sec. 8. Each member of the House of Representatives shall be a qualified elector of the State, and shall have resided in the county for which he is chosen for one year immediately preceding his election.

Sec. 9. In the election of all officers, whose appointment shall be conferred upon the General Assembly by the Constitution, the vote shall be viva voce.

Sec. 10. The General Assembly shall have power to pass general laws regulating divorce and alimony, but shall not have power to grant a divorce or secure alimony in any individual case.

Sec. 11. The General Assembly shall not have power to pass any private law to alter the name of any person or to legitimate any person not born in lawful wedlock, or to restore to the rights of citizenship any person convicted of an infamous crime, but shall have power to pass general laws regulating the same.

Sec. 12. The General Assembly shall not pass any private law, unless it shall be made to appear thirty days' notice of application to pass such a law shall have been given, under such directions and in such manner as shall be provided by law.

Sec. 13. If vacancies shall occur in the General Assembly by death, resignation or otherwise, writs of election shall be issued by the Governor under such regulations as may be prescribed by law.

cessors are elected and qualified; **Provided**, that the officers first elected shall assume the duties of their office ten days after the approval of this Constitution by the Congress of the United States, and shall hold their offices four years from after the first day of January.

Sec. 2. No person shall be eligible as Governor or Lieutenant-Governor, unless he shall have attained the age of thirty years, shall have been a citizen of the United States five years, and shall have been a resident of this State for two years next before the election; nor shall the person elected to either of these two offices be eligible to the same office more than four years in any term of eight years unless the office shall have been cast upon him as Lieutenant-Governor or President of the Senate.

Sec. 3. The return of every election for officers of the Executive Department shall be sealed up and transmitted to the seat of government by the returning officers, directed to the Speaker of the House of Representatives, who shall open and publish the same in the presence of a majority of the members of both Houses of the General Assembly. The persons having the highest number of votes respectively shall be declared duly elected; but if two or more be equal and highest in vote for the same office, then one of them shall be chosen by joint ballot of both Houses of the General Assembly. Contested elections shall be determined by a joint ballot of both Houses of the General Assembly, in such manner as shall be prescribed by law.

Sec. 4. The Governor, before entering upon the duties of his office, shall, in the presence of the members of both branches of the General Assembly, or before any Justice of the Supreme Court, take an oath or affirmation that he will support the Constitution and laws of the United States, and of the State of North Carolina, and that he will faithfully perform the duties appertaining to the office of Governor to which he has been elected.

Sec. 5. The Governor shall reside at the seat of government of this State, and he shall, from time to time, give the General Assembly information of the affairs of the tSate, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall deem expedient.

Sec. 6. The Governor shall have power to grant reprieves, commutations and pardons, after conviction, for all offences (except in case of impeachment), upon such conditions as he may think proper, subject to such regulations as may be provided by law relative to the manner of applying for pardons. He shall biennially communicate to the General Assembly each case of reprieve, commutation or pardon granted, stating the name of each convict, the crime for which he was convicted, the sentence and its date, the date of commutation, pardon or reprieve, and the reasons therefor.

Sec. 7. The officers of the Executive Department and of the public institutions of the State shall, at least five days previous to each regular session of the General Assembly, severally report to the Governor, who shall transmit such reports,

Confederate Monument, Weldon, N. C.

with his message, to the General Assembly; and the Governor may, at any time, require information in writing from the officers in the Executive Department upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed.

Sec. 8. The Governor shall be Commander-in-Chief of the militia of the State, except when they shall be called into the service of the United States.

Sec. 9. The Governor shall have power, on extraordinary occasions, by and with the advice of the Council of State, to convene the General Assembly in extra session by his proclamation, stating therein the purpose or purposes for which they are thus convened.

Sec. 10. The Governor shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of a majority of the Senators elect, appoint all officers, whose offices are established by this Constitution, and whose appointments are not otherwise provided for.

Sec. 11. The Lieutenant-Governor shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no vote unless the Senate be equally divided. He shall, whilst acting as President of the Senate, receive for his services the same pay which shall, for the same period, be allowed to the Speaker of the House of Representatives; and he shall receive no other compensation except when he is acting as Governor.

Sec. 12. In case of the impeachment of the Governor, his failure to qualify, his absence from

the State, his inability to discharge the duties of his office, or, in case the office of Governor shall in anywise become vacant, the powers, duties and emoluments of the office shall devolve upon the Lieutenant-Governor until the disabilities shall cease, or a new Governor shall be elected and qualified. In every case in which the Lieutenant-Governor shall be unable to preside over the Senate, the Senators shall elect one of their own number President of their body, and the powers, duties and emoluments of the office of Governor shall devolve upon him whenever the Lieutenant-Governor shall, for any reason, be prevented from discharging the duties of such office as above provided, and he shall continue as acting-Governor until the disabilities are removed, or a new Governor or Lieutenant-Governor shall be elected and qualified. Whenever, during the recess of the General Assembly, it shall become necessary for the President of the Senate to administer the government, the Secretary of State shall convene the Senate, that they may elect such President.

Sec. 13. The respective duties of the Secretary of State, Auditor, Treasurer, Superintendent of Public Instruction and Attorney-General shall be prescribed by law. If the office of any of the officers shall be vacated by death, resignation or otherwise, it shall be the duty of the Governor to appoint another until the disability be removed or his successor be elected and qualified. Every such vacancy shall be filled by election at the first general election that occurs more than thirty days

after the vacancy has taken place, and the person chosen shall hold the office for the remainder of the unexpired term fixed in the first section of this Article.

Sec. 14. The Secretary of State, Auditor, Treasurer and Superintendent of Public Instruction shall constitute, ex officio, the Council of State, who shall advise the Governor in the execution of his office, and three of whom shall constitute a quorum; their advice and proceedings in this capacity shall be entered in a journal to be kept for this purpose exclusively, and signed by the members present, from any part of which any member may enter his dissent; and such journal shall be placed before the General Assembly when called for by either House. The Attorney-General shall be, ex officio, the legal adviser of the Executive Department.

Sec. 15. The officers mentioned in this Article shall, at stated periods, receive for their services a compensation to be established by law, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the time for which they shall have been elected, and the said officers shall receive no other emolument or allowance.

Sec. 16. There shall be a seal of the State, which shall be kept by the Governor, and used by him, as occasion may require, and shall be called "the Great Seal of the State of North Carolina." All grants and commissions shall be entered in the name and by the authority of the State of North Carolina, sealed with the "Great Seal of the State,"

signed by the Goernor and countersigned by the Secretary of State.

Sec. 17. The General Assembly shall establish a Department of Agriculture, Immigration and Statistics, under such regulations as may best promote the agricultural interests of the State, and shall enact laws for the adequate protection and encouragement of sheep husbandry.

ARTICLE IV.

Judicial Department.

Section 1. The distinctions between actions at law and suits in equity, and the forms of all such actions and suits, shall be abolished; and there shall be in this State but one form of action for the enforcement or protection of private rights or the redress of private wrongs, which shall be denominated a civil action; and every action prosecuted by the people of the State as a party, against a person charged with a public offence, for the punishment of the same, shall be termed a criminal action. Feigned issues shall also be abolished, and the fact at issue tried by order of Court before a jury.

Sec. 2. The judicial power of the State shall be vested in a Court for the trial of Impeachments, a Supreme Court, Superior Courts, Courts of Justices of the Peace, and such other courts inferior to the Supreme Court as may be established by law.

Sec. 3. The Court for the trial of Impeachments shall be the Senate. A majority of the members shall be necessary to a quorum, and the judgment shall not extend beyond removal from and disqualification to hold office in this State; but the party shall be liable to indictment and punishment according to law.

Sec. 4. The House of Representatives solely shall have the power of impeaching. No person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the Senators present. When the Governor is impeached, the Chief-Justice shall preside.

Sec. 5. Treason against the State shall consist only in levying war against it, or in adhering to its enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act or on confession in open court. No conviction of treason or attainder shall work corruption of blood or forfeiture.

Sec. 6. The Supreme Court shall consist of a Chief-Justice and two Associate Justices.

Sec. 7. The terms of the Supreme Court shall be held in the city of Raleigh, as now, until otherwise provided by the General Assembly.

Sec. 8. The Supreme Court shall have jurisdiction to review, upon appeal, any decision of the courts below, upon any matter of law or legal inference. And the jurisdiction of said Court over "issues of fact" and "questions of fact" shall be the same exercised by it before the adoption of the Constitution of one thousand eight hundred and

sixty-eight, and the Court shall have the power to issue any remedial writs necessary to give it a general supervision and control over the proceedings of the inferior courts.

Sec. 9. The Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction to hear claims against the State, but its decisions shall be merely recommendatory; no process in the nature of execution shall issue thereon; they shall be reported to the next session of the General Assembly for its action.

Sec. 10. The State shall be divided into nine judicial districts, for each of which a Judge shall be chosen; and there shall be held a Superior Court in each county at least twice in each year, to continue for such time in each county as may be prescribed by law. But the General Assembly may reduce or increase the number of districts.

Sec. 11. Every Judge of the Superior Court shall reside in the district for which he is elected. The Judges shall preside in the Courts of the different districts successively, but no Judge shall hold the Courts in the same district oftener than once in four years; but in the case of the pro tracted illness of the Judge assigned to preside in any district, or of any other unavoidable accident to him by reason of which he shall be unable to preside, the Governor may require any Judge to hold one or more specified terms in said districts in lieu of the Judge assigned to hold the Courts of the said districts.

Sec. 12. The General Assembly shall have no power to deprive the Judicial Department of any

power or jurisdiction which rightfully pertains to it as a co-ordinate department of the government; but the General Assembly shall allot and distribute that portion of this power and jurisdiction, which does not pertain to the Supreme Court, among the other courts prescribed in this Constitution or which may be established by law, in such manner as it may deem best; provide also a proper system of appeals; and regulate by law, when necessary, the methods of proceeding in the exercise of their power, of all the courts below the Supreme Court, so far as the same may be done without conflict with other provisions of this Constitution.

Sec. 13. In all issues of fact, joined in any court, the parties may waive the right to have the same determined by a jury: in which case the finding of the Judge upon the facts shall have the force and effect of a verdict by a jury.

Sec. 14. The General Assembly shall provide for the establishment of Special Courts for the trial of misdemeanors, in cities and towns where the same may be necessary.

Sec. 15. The Clerk of the Supreme Court shall be appointed by the Court, and shall hold his office for eight years.

Sec. 16. A Clerk of the Superior Court for each county shall be elected by the qualified voters thereof, at the time and in the manner prescribed by law for the election of members of the General Assembly.

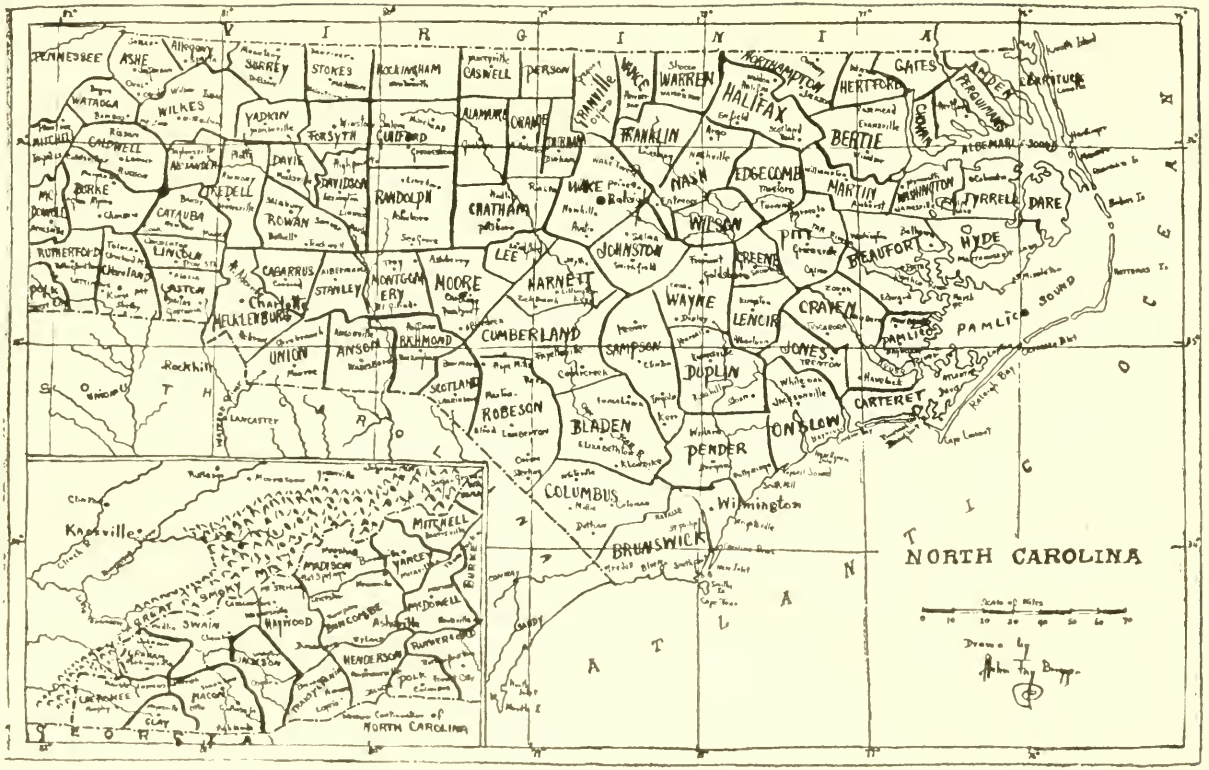
Sec. 17. Clerks of the Superior Courts shall hold their offices for four years.

Sec. 18. The General Assembly shall prescribe and regulate the fees, salaries and emoluments of all officers provided for in this Article; but the salaries of the Judges shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

Sec. 19. The laws of North Carolina, not repugnant to this Constitution, or the Constitution and laws of the United States, shall be in force until lawfully altered.

Sec. 20. Actions at law, and suits in equity, pending when this Constitution shall go into effect, shall be transferred to the courts having jurisdiction thereof, without prejudice by reason of the change; and all such actions and suits commenced before, and pending at the adoption by the General Assembly of the rules and practice and procedure herein provided for, shall be heard and determined according to the practice now in use, unless otherwise provided for by said rules.

Sec. 21. The Justices of the Supreme Court shall be elected by the qualified voters of the State, as is provided for the election of members of the General Assembly. They shall hold their offices for eight years. The Judges of the Superior Courts, elected at the first election under this amendment, shall be elected in like maner as is provided for Justices of the Supreme Court, and shall hold their offices for eight years. The General Assembly may, from time to time, provide by law that the Judges of the Superior Courts, chosen


VIRGINIA
TENNESSEE
ASHE
ALLEGHANY
SURREY
STOKES
ROCKINGHAM
CASWELL
PERSON
GRANVILLE
VANCE
WARREN
HALIFAX
NORTHAMPTON
HERTFORD
GATES
CHOWAN
PERQUIMANS
PASQUOTANK
ELIZABETH CITY
CURRITUCK
WATAUGA
WILKES
YADKIN
FORSYTH
GUILFORD
ALAMANCE
ORANGE
DURHAM
FRANKLIN
BERTIE
ALEXANDER
IREDELL
DAVIE
DAVIDSON
RANDOLPH
CHATHAM
WAKE
NASH
EDGECOMBE
MARTIN
WASHINGTON
TYRRELL
DARE
BURKE
CATAWBA
ROWAN
LEE
JOHNSTON
WILSON
PITT
GREENE
BEAUFORT
HYDE
ROTHERFORD
LINCOLN
CABARRUS
STANLY
MONTGOMERY
MOORE
HARNETT
WAYNE
CRAVEN
POLK
GASTON
CHARLOTTE
MECKLENBURG
CUMBERLAND
LENOIR
PAMLICO
PAMLICO SOUND
UNION
ANSON
RICHMOND
SAMPSON
JONES
ROBESON
DUPLIN
CARTERET
SCOTLAND
ONSLOW
BLADEN
PENDER
COLUMBUS
Wilmington
BRUNSWICK
NORTH CAROLINA
Knoxville
MITCHELL
YANCEY
MADISON
BUNCOMBE
McDOWELL
GREAT SMOKY MTS.
SWAIN
HAYWOOD
JACKSON
HENDERSON
POLK
MACON
CLAY
GEORGIA
North Carolina

at succeeding elections, instead of being elected by the voters of the whole State, as is herein provided for, shall be elected by the voters of their respective districts.

Sec. 22. The Superior Courts shall be, at all times, open for the transaction of all business within their jurisdiction, except the trial of issues of fact requiring a jury.

Sec. 23. A Solicitor shall be elected for each Judicial District by the qualified voters thereof, as is prescribed for members of the General Assembly, who shall hold office for the term of four years, and prosecute on behalf of the State, in all criminal actions in the Superior Courts, and advise the officers of justice in his district.

Sec. 24. In each county a Sheriff and Coroner shall be elected by the qualified voters thereof, as is prescribed for members of the General Assembly, and shall hold their offices for two years. In each township there shall be a Constable elected in like manner by the voters thereof, who shall hold his office for two years. When there is no Coroner in the county, the Clerk of the Superior Court for the county may appoint one for special cases. In case of a vacancy existing for any cause in any of the offices created by this section, the Commissioners for the county may appoint to such office for the unexpired term.

Sec. 25. All vacancies occurring in the offices provided for by this Article of the Constitution shall be filled by the appointments of the Governor, unless otherwise provided for, and the ap-

pointees shall hold their places until the next regular election for members of the General Assembly, when elections shall be held to fill such offices. If any person, elected or appointed to any of said offices, shall neglect and fail to qualify, such office shall be appointed to, held and filled as provided in case of vacancies occurring therein. All incumbents of said offices shall hold until their successors are qualified.

Sec. 26. The officers elected at the first election held under this Constitution shall hold their offices for the terms prescribed for them respectively, next ensuing after the next regular election for members of the General Assembly. But their terms shall begin upon the approval of this Constitution by the Congress of the United States.

Sec. 27. The several Justices of the Peace shall have jurisdiction, under such regulations as the General Assembly shall prescribe, of civil actions founded on contract, wherein the sum demanded shall not exceed two hundred dollars, and wherein the title to real estate shall not be in controversy; and of all criminal matters arising within their counties where the punishment cannot exceed a fine of fifty dollars, or imprisonement for thirty days. And the General Assembly may give to Justices of the Peace jurisdiction of other civil actions wherein the value of the property in controversy does not exceed fifty dollars. When an issue of fact may be joined before a Justice, on demand of either party thereto, he shall cause a jury of six men to be summoned, who shall try the same. The

party against whom judgment shall be rendered in any civil action may appeal to the Superior Court from the same. In all cases of a criminal nature, the party against whom judgment is given may appeal to the Superior Court, where the matter shall be heard anew. In all cases brought before a Justice he shall make a record of the proceedings, and file the same with the Clerk of the Superior Court for his county.

Sec. 28. When the office of Justice of the Peace shall become vacant otherwise than by expiration of the term, and in case of a failure by the voters of any district to elect, the Clerk of the Superior Court for the county shall appoint to fill the vacancy for the unexpired term.

Sec. 29. In case the office of Clerk of a Superior Court for a county shall become vacant otherwise than by the expiration of the term, and in case of a failure by the people to elect, the Judge of the Superior Court for the county shall appoint to fill the vacancy until an election can be regularly held.

Sec. 30. In case the General Assembly shall establish other courts inferior to the Supreme Court, the presiding officers and clerks thereof shall be elected in such manner as the General Assembly may from time to time prescribe, and they shall hold their offices for a term not exceeding eight years.

Sec. 31. Any Judge of the Supreme Court, or of the Superior Courts, and the presiding officers of such courts inferior to the Supreme Court, as may be established by law, may be removed from office

for mental or physical inability, upon a concurrent resolution of two-thirds of both Houses of the General Assembly. The Judge or presiding officer against whom the General Assembly may be about to proceed, shall receive notice thereof, accompanied by a copy of the causes alleged for his removal, at least twenty days before the day on which either House of the General Assembly shall act thereon.

Sec. 32. Any Clerk of the Supreme Court, or of the Superior Courts, or of such courts inferior to the Supreme Court as may be established by law may be removed from office for mental or physical inability; the Clerk of the Supreme Court by the Judges of said courts, the Clerks of the Superior Courts by the Judge riding the district, and the Clerks of such courts inferior to the Supreme Court as may be established by law, by the presiding officers of said courts. The Clerk against whom proceedings are instituted shall receive notice thereof, accompanied by a copy of the causes alleged for his removal, at least ten days before the day appointed to act thereon, and the Clerk shall be entitled to an appeal to the next term of the Superior Court, and thence to the Supreme Court, as provided in other cases of appeals.

Sec. 33. The amendments made to the Constitution of North Carolina by this Convention shall not have the effect to vacate any office or term of office now existing under the Constitution of the State, and filled, or held, by virtue of any election

or appointment under the said Constitution, and the laws of the State made in pursuance thereof.

ARTICLE V.

Revenue and Taxation.

Section 1. The General Assembly shall levy a capitation tax on every male inhabitants of the State over twenty-one and under fifty years of age, which shall be equal on each to the tax on property valued at three hundred dollars in cash. The commissioners of the several counties may exempt from capitation tax in special cases on account of poverty and infirmity, and the State and county capitation tax combined shall never exceed two dollars on the head.

Sec. 2. The proceeds of the State and county capitation tax shall be applied to the purposes of education and the support of the poor, but in no one year shall more than twenty-five per cent. thereof be appropriated to the latter purpose.

Sec. 3. Laws shall be passed taxing, by a uniform rule, all moneys, credits, investments in bonds, stocks, joint-stock companies, or otherwise; and, also, all real and personal property, according to its true value in money. The General Assembly may also tax trades, professions, franchises and incomes, provided that no income shall be taxed when the property from which the income is derived is taxed.

Sec. 4. Until the bonds of the State shall be at

par, the General Assembly shall have no power to contract any new debt or pecuniary obligation in behalf of the State, except to supply a casual deficit, or for suppressing invasion or insurrection unless it shall in the same bill levy a special tax to pay the interest annually. And the General Assembly shall have no power to give or lend the credit of the State in aid of any person, association or corporation, except to aid in the completion of such railroads as may be unfinished at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, or in which the State has a direct pecuniary interest, unless the subject be submitted to a direct vote of the people of the State, and be approved by a majority of those who shall vote thereon.

Sec. 5. Property belonging to the State or to municipal corporations shall be exempt from taxation. The General Assembly may exempt cemeteries, and property held for educational, scientific literary, charitable or religious purposes; also wearing apparel, arms for muster, household and kitchen furniture, the mechanical and agricultural implements of mechanics and farmers; libraries and scientific instruments, or any other personal property, to a value not exceeding three hundred dollars.

Sec. 6. The taxes levied by the commissioners of the several counties for county purposes shall be levied in like manner with the State taxes, and shall never exceed the double of the State taxes except for a special purpose, and with the special approval of the General Assembly.

Sec. 7. Every act of the General Assembly levying a tax shall state the special object to which it is to be applied, and it shall be applied to no other purpose.

ARTICLE VI.

Suffrage and Eligibility to Office.

Section 1. Every male person born in the United States, and every male person who has been naturalized, twenty-one years old or upward, who shall have resided in the State twelve months next preceding the election and ninety days in the county in which he offers to vote, shall be deemed an elector. But no person, who, upon conviction or confession in open court, shall be adjudged guilty of felony, or any other crime infamous by the laws of this State, and hereafter committed shall be deemed an elector, unless such person shall be restored to the rights of citizenship in a manner prescribed by law.

Sec. 2. It shall be the duty of the General Assembly to provide, from time to time, for the registration of all electors; and no person shall be allowed to vote without registration, or to register without first taking an oath or affirmation to support and maintain the Constitution and laws of the United States, and the Constitution and laws of North Carolina not inconsistent therewith.

Sec. 3. All elections by the people shall be by ballot, and all elections by the General Assembly shall be viva voce.

Sec. 4. Every voter, except as hereinafter provided, shall be eligible to office; but before entering upon the discharge of the duties of his office, he shall take and subscribe the following oath: "I, ——— ———, do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will support and maintain the Constitution and laws of the United States, and the Constitution and laws of North Carolina not inconsistent therewith, and that I will faithfully discharge the duties of my office. So help me, God."

Sec. 5. The following classes of persons shall be disqualified for office: First, all persons who shall deny the being of Almighty God. Second. All persons who shall have been convicted of treason, perjury, or of any other infamous crime, since becoming citizens of the United States, or of corruption, or malpractice in office, unless such person shall have been legally restored to the rights of citizenship.

ARTICLE VII.

Municipal Corporations.

Section 1. In each county, there shall be elected biennially by the qualified voters thereof, as provided for the election of members of the General Assembly, the following officers: a Treasurer, Register of Deeds, Surveyor and five Commissioners.

Sec. 2. It shall be the duty of the Commissioners to exercise a general supervision and control of the penal and charitable institutions, schools, roads, bridges, levying of taxes and finances of the county, as may be prescribed by law. The Regis-

ter of Deeds shall be, ex officio, Clerk of the Board of Commissioners.

Sec. 3. It shall be the duty of the Commissioners first elected in each county to divide the same into convenient districts, to determine the boundaries and prescribe the name of the said districts, and to report the same to the General Assembly before the first day of January, one thousand eight hundred and sixty-nine.

Sec. 4. Upon the approval of the reports provided for in the foregoing section, by the General Assembly, the said districts shall have corporate powers for the necessary purposes of local government, and shall be known as townhips.

Sec. 5. In each township there shall be biennially elected, by the qualified voters thereof, a Clerk and two Justices of the Peace, who shall constitute a Board of Trustees, and shall, under the supervision of the County Commissioners, have control of the taxes and finances, roads and bridges of the townships, as may be prescribed by law. The General Assembly may provide for the election of a larger number of the Justices of the Peace in cities and towns, and in those townships in which cities and towns are situated. In every township there shall also be biennially elected a School Committee, consisting of three persons, whose duty shall be prescribed by law.

Sec. 6. The Township Board of Trustees shall assess the taxable property of their townships and make return to the County Commissioners for re-

vision, as may be prescribed by law. The Clerk shall be, ex officio, Treasurer of the township.

Sec. 7. No county, city, town or other municipal corporation shall contract any debt, pledge its faith, or loan its credit, nor shall any tax be levied or collected by any officers of the same, except for the necessary expenses thereof, unless by a vote of a majority of the qualified voters therein.

Sec. 8. No money shall be drawn from any county or township treasury except by authority of law.

Sec. 9. All taxes levied by any county, city, town, or township, shall be uniform and ad valorem, upon all property in the same, except property exempted by this Constitution.

Sec. 10. The county officers first elected under the provisions of this Article shall enter upon their duties ten days after the approval of this Constitution by the Congress of the United States.

Sec. 11. The Governor shall appoint a sufficient number of Justices of the Peace in each county, who shall hold their places until sections four, five and six of this Article shall have been carried into effect.

Sec. 12. All charters, ordinances and provisions relating to municipal corporations shall remain in force until legally changed, unless inconsistent with the provisions of this Constitution.

Sec. 13. No county, city, town or other municipal corporation shall assume to pay, nor shall any tax be levied or collected for the payment of any debt, or the interest upon any debt, contracted

directly or indirectly in aid or support of the rebellion.

Sec. 14. The General Assembly shall have full power by statute to modify, change, or abridge any and all of the provisions of this Article, and substitute others in their place, except sections seven, nine and thirteen.

ARTICLE VIII.

Corporations Other Than Municipal.

Sec. 1. Corporations may be formed under general laws; but shall not be created by special act, except for municipal purposes, and in cases where, in the judgment of the Legislature, the object of the corporations cannot be attained under general laws. All general laws and special acts, passed pursuant to this section, may be altered from time to time, or repealed.

Sec. 2. Dues from corporations shall be secured by such individual liabilities of the corporation and other means, as may be prescribed by law.

Sec. 3. The term corporation, as used in this Article, shall be construed to include all association and joint-stock companies, having any of the powers and privileges of corporations, not possessed by individuals or partnerships. And all corporations shall have the right to sue, and shall be subject to be sued in all courts, in like cases as natural persons.

Sec. 4. It shall be the duty of the Legislature to provide for the organization of cities, towns and

incorporated villages, and to restrict their power of taxation, assessment, borrowing money, contracting debts, and loaning their credits, so as to prevent abuses in assessment and in contracting debts by such municipal corporations.

ARTICLE IX.

Education.

Section 1. Religion, morality and knowledge being necessary to good government and the happiness of mankind, schools and the means of education shall forever be encouraged.

Sec. 2. The general Assembly, at the first session under this Constitution, shall provide by taxation and otherwise, for a general and uniform system of public schools, wherein tuition shall be free of charge to all the children of the State between the ages of six and twenty-one years. And the children of the white race and the children of the colored race shall be taught in separate public schools; but there shall be no discrimination in favor of, or to the prejudice of, either race.

Sec. 3. Each county of the State shall be divided into a convenient number of districts, in which one or more public schools shall be maintained at least four months in every year; and if the Commissioners of any county shall fail to comply with the aforesaid requirements of this section they shall be liable to indictment.

Sec. 4. The proceeds of all lands that have been or hereafter may be granted by the United States

to this State, and not otherwise appropriated by this State or the United States; also, all moneys stocks, bonds, and other property, now belonging to any State fund for purposes of education; also the net proceeds of all sales of the swamp lands belonging to the State, and all other grants, gifts or devises that have been or hereafter may be made to the State, and not otherwise appropriated by the State, or by the term of the grant, gift or devise, shall be paid into the State treasury; and, together with so much of the ordinary revenue of the State as may be by law set apart for that purpose, shall be faithfully appropriated for establishing and maintaining in this State a system of free public schools, and for no other uses or purposes whatsoever.

Sec. 5. All moneys, stocks, bonds, and other property, belonging to a county school fund; also, the net proceeds from the sale of estrays; also, the clear proceeds of all penalties and forfeitures, and of all fines collected in the several counties for any breach of the penal or military laws of the State; and all moneys which shall be paid by persons as an equivalent for exemption from military duty shall belong to and remain in the several counties, and shall be faithfully appropriated for establishing and maintaining free public schools in the several counties of this State: **Provided,** That the amount collected in each county shall be annually reported to the Superintendent of Public Instruction.

Sec. 6. The General Assembly shall have power

to provide for the election of Trustees of the University of North Carolina, in whom, when chosen, shall be vested all the privileges, rights, franchises and endowments thereof, in anywise granted to or conferred upon the Trustees of said University; and the General Assembly may make such provisions, laws and regulations from time to time, as may be necessary and expedient for the maintenance and management of said University.

Sec. 7. The General Assembly shall provide that the benefits of the University, as far as practicable, be extended to the youth of the State free of expense for tuition; also, that all the property which has heretofore accrued to the State, or shall hereafter accrue, from escheats, unclaimed dividends, or distributive shares of the estates of deceased persons, shall be appropriated to the use of the University.

Sec. 8. The Governor, Lieutenant-Governor Secretary of State, Treasurer, Auditor, Superintendent of Public Instruction and Attorney-General shall constitute a State Board of Education.

Sec. 9. The Governor shall be President, and the Superintendent of Public Instruction shall be Secretary of the Board of Education.

Sec. 10. The Board of Education shall succeed to all the powers and trusts of the President and Directors of the Literary Fund of North Carolina and shall have full power to legislate and make all needful rules and regulations in relation to free public schools and the educational fund of the State; but all acts, rules and regulations of said

Board may be altered, amended or repealed by the General Assembly, and when so altered, amended or repealed, they shall not be re-enacted by the Board.

Sec. 11. The first session of the Board of Education shall be held at the capitol of the State within fifteen days after the organization of the State government under this Constitution; the time of future meetings may be determined by the Board.

Sec. 12. A majority of the Board shall constitute a quorum for the transaction of business.

Sec. 13. The contingent expenses of the Board shall be provided by the General Assembly.

Sec. 14. As soon as practicable after the adoption of this Constitution, the General Assembly shall establish and maintain, in connection with the University, a Department of Agriculture, of Mechanics, of Mining, and of Normal Instruction.

Sec. 15. The General Assembly is hereby empowered to enact that every child, of sufficient mental and physical ability, shall attend the public schools during the period between the ages of six and eighteen years for a term not less than sixteen months, unless educated by other means.

ARTICLE X.

Homestead and Exemptions.

Section 1. The personal property of any resident of this State, to the value of five hundred dollars, to be selected by such resident, shall be,

and is hereby exempted from sale under execution, or other final process of any court issued for the collection of any debt.

Sec. 2. Every homestead, and the dwellings and buildings used therewith, not exceeding in value one thousand dollars, to be selected by the owner thereof, or in lieu thereof, at the option of the owner, any lot in a city, town or village, with the dwellings and buildings used thereon, owned and occupied by any resident of this State, and not exceeding the value of one thousand dollars, shall be exempt from sale under execution, or other final process obtained on any debt. But no property shall be exempt from sale for taxes, or for payment of obligations contracted for the purchase of said premises.

Sec. 3. The homestead, after the death of the owner thereof, shall be exempt from the payment of any debt during the minority of his children or any one of them.

Sec. 4. The provisions of sections one and two of this Article shall not be so construed as to prevent a laborer's lien for work done and performed for the person claiming such exemption, or a mechanic's lien for work done on the premises.

Sec. 5. If the owner of a homestead die, leaving a widow, but no children, the same shall be exempt from the debts of her husband, and the rents and profits thereof shall inure to her benefit during her widowhood, unless she be the owner of a homestead in her own right.

Sec. 6. The real and personal property of any

female in this State acquired before marriage, and all property, real and personal, to which she may, after marriage, become in any manner entitled, shall be and remain the sole and separate estate and property of such female, and shall not be liable for any debts, obligations or engagements of her husband, and may be devised and bequeathed, and, with the written consent of her husband, conveyed by her as if she was unmarried.

Sec. 7. The husband may insure his own life for the sole use and benefit of his wife and children, and in the case of the death of the husband the amount thus insured shall be paid over to his wife and children, or to the guardian, if under age for her, or their own use, free from all the claims of the representatives of her husband, or any of his creditors.

Sec. 8. Nothing contained in the foregoing sections of this Article shall operate to prevent the owner of a homestead from disposing of the same by deed; but no deed made by the owner of a homestead shall be valid without the voluntary signature and assent of his wife, signified on her private examination according to law.

ARTICLE XI.

Punishments, Penal Institutions and Public Charities.

Section 1. The following punishments only shall be known to the laws of this State, viz.: death, imprisonement, with or without hard labor

fines, removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust or profit under this State. The foregoing provisions for imprisonment with hard labor shall be construed to authorize the employment of such convict labor on public works or highways or other labor for public benefit, and the farming out thereof, where and in such manner as may be provided by law; but no convict shall be farmed out who has been sentenced on a charge of murder, manslaughter rape, attempt to commit rape, or arson: **Provided**, That no convict whose labor may be farmed out shall be punished for any failure of duty as a laborer, except by a responsible officer of the State; but the convicts so farmed out shall be at all times under the supervision and control, as to their government and discipline, of the Penitentiary Board or some officer of this State.

Sec. 2. The object of punishments being not only to satisfy justice, but also to reform the offender, and thus prevent crime, murder, arson, burglary, and rape, and these only, may be punishable with death, if the General Assembly shall so enact.

Sec. 3. The General Assembly shall, at its first meeting, make provision for the erection and conduct of a State's Prison or Penitentiary, at some central and accessible point within the State.

Sec. 4. The General Assembly may provide for the erection of Houses of Correction, where vagrants and persons guilty of misdemeanors shall be restrained and usefully employed.

Sec. 5. A House, or Houses of Refuge, may be established whenever the public interest may require it, for the correction and instruction of other classes of offenders.

Sec. 6. It shall be required, by competent legislation, that the structure and superintendence of penal institutions of the State, the county jails, and city police prisons, secure the health and comfort of the prisoners, and that male and female prisoners be never confined in the same room or cell.

Sec. 7. Beneficent provisions for the poor, the unfortunate and orphan being one of the first duties of a civilized and Christian State, the General Assembly shall, at its first session, appoint and define the duties of a Board of Public Charities, to whom shall be entrusted the supervision of all charitable and penal State institutions, and who shall annually report to the Governor upon their condition, with suggestions for their improvement.

Sec. 8. There shall also, as soon as practicable be measures devised by the State, for the establishment of one or more Orphan Houses, where destitute orphans may be cared for, educated and taught some business or trade.

Sec. 9. It shall be the duty of the Legislature, as soon as practicable, to devise means for the education of idiots and inebriates.

Sec. 10. The General Assembly may provide that the indigent deaf mutes, blind and insane of the State shall be cared for at the charge of the State.

Sec. 11. It shall be steadily kept in view by the Legislature, and the Board of Public Charities, that all penal and charitable institutions should be made as nearly self-supporting as is consistent with the purposes of their creation.

ARTICLE XII.

Militia.

Section 1. All able-bodied male citizens of the State of North Carolina, between the ages of twenty-one and forty years, who are citizens of the United States, shall be liable to duty in the militia; **Provided,** That all persons who may be averse to bearing arms, from religious scruples, shall be exempt therefrom.

Sec. 2. The General Assembly shall provide for the organization, arming, equipping and discipline of the militia, and for paying the same when called into active service.

Sec. 3. The Governor shall be Commander-in-Chief, and shall have power to call out the militia to execute the law, suppress riots or insurrections and to repel invasion.

Sec. 4. The General Assembly shall have power to make such exemptions as may be deemed necessary, and to enact laws that may be expedient for the government of the militia.

ARTICLE XIII.

Amendments.

Section 1. No Convention of the people of this State shall ever be called by the General Assem-

bly, unless by the concurrence of two-thirds of all the members of each House of the General Assembly, and except the proposition "Convention" or "No Convention" be first submitted to the qualified voters of the whole State, at the next general election, in a manner to be prescribed by law. And should a majority of the votes cast be in favor of said Convention, it shall assemble on such a day as may be prescribed by the General Assembly.

Sec. 2. No part of the Constitution of this State shall be altered, unless a bill to alter the same shall have been agreed to by three-fifths of each House of the General Assembly. And the amendment or amendments so agreed to shall be submitted at the next general election to the qualified voters of the whole State, in such manner as may be prescribed by law. And in the event of their adoption by a majority of the votes cast, such amendment or amendments shall become a part of the Constitution of this State.

ARTICLE XIV.

Miscellaneous.

Section 1. All indictments which shall have been found, or may hereafter be found, for any crime or offence committed before this Constitution takes effect, may be proceeded upon in the proper courts, but no punishment shall be inflicted which is forbidden by this Constitution.

Sec. 2. No person who shall hereafter fight a

duel, or assist in the same as a second, or send, accept or knowingly carry a challenge therefor, or agree to go out of the State to fight a duel, shall hold any office in this State.

Sec. 3. No money shall be drawn from the treasury but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and an accurate account of the receipts and expenditures of the public moneys shall be annually published.

Sec. 4. The General Assembly shall provide, by proper legislation, for giving to mechanics and laborers an adequate lien on the subject matter of their labor.

Sec. 5. In the absence of any contrary provision, all officers of this State, whether heretofore elected or appointed by the Governor, shall hold their positions only until other appointments are made by the Governor, or if the officers are elective, until their successors shall have been chosen and duly qualified according to the provisions of this Constitution.

Sec. 6. The seat of government of this State shall remain at the City of Raleigh.

Sec. 7. No person, who shall hold any office or place of trust or profit under the United States or any department thereof, or under this State, or under any other State, or government, shall hold or exercise any other office or place of trust or profit under the authority of this State, or be eligible to a seat in either House of the General Assembly: **Provided**, that nothing herein contained shall extend to officers in the militia, Jus-

tices of the Peace, Commissioners of Public Charities, or commissioners for special purposes.

Sec. 8. All marriages between a white person and a negro, or between a white person and a person of negro descent to the third generation inclusive, are hereby forever prohibited.

APPENDIX II.

COLONIAL GOVERNORS FROM THE SETTLEMENT TO THE REVOLUTION

1	1663	William Drummond
2	1667	Samuel Stephens
3	1674	George Carteret
4	1677	Thomas Miller
5	1677	John Culpepper
6	1680	John Harvey
7	1680	John Jenkins
8	1681	Henry Wilkinson
9	1683	Seth Southwell
10	1689	Philip Ludwell
11	1693	Alexander Lillington
12	1695	Thomas Harvey
13	1699	Henderson Walker
14	1704	Robert Daniel
15	1705	Thomas Carey
16	1709	William Glover
17	1710	Edward Hyde
18	1713	Thomas Pollock
19	1714	Charles Eden
20	1722	Thomas Pollock
21	1722	William Reed
22	1724	George Burrington
23	1725	Richard Everard

24	1729	George Burrington
25	1734	Nathaniel Rice
26	1734	Gabriel Johnston
27	1753	Matthew Rowan
28	1754	Arthur Dobbs
29	1765	William Tryon
30	1771	James Hasell
31	1771	Josiah Martin

GOVERNORS SINCE THE REVOLUTION

1	1776	Richard Caswell
2	1780	Abner Nash
3	1781	Thomas Burk
4	1781	Alexander Martin
5	1785	Richard Caswell
6	1788	Samuel Johnston
7	1790	Alexander Martin
8	1792	Richard Dobbs Speight
9	1794	Samuel Ashe
10	1798	William R. Davie
11	1799	Benjamin Williams
12	1802	James Turner
13	1805	Nathaniel Alexander
14	1807	Benjamin Williams
15	1808	David Stone
16	1810	Benjamin Smith
17	1811	William Hawkins
18	1814	William Miller
19	1817	John Branch
20	1820	Jesse Franklin

21	1821	Grabiel Holmes
22	1824	Hutchins G. Burton
23	1827	James Iredell
24	1828	James Owen
25	1830	Montford Stokes
26	1832	David L. Swain
27	1835	Richard D. Spaight
28	1837	E. B. Dudley
29	1840	J. M. Morehead
30	1845	William A. Graham
31	1849	Charles Manley
32	1851	Daniel S. Reid
33	1855	Thomas Bragg
34	1859	John W. Ellis
35	1861	Henry T. Clark
36	1862	Zebulon B. Vance
37	1865	William W. Holden
38	1866	Jonathan Work
39	1868	William W. Holden
40	1870	Tod R. Caldwell
41	1874	Curtis H. Bragden
42	1876	Zebulon B. Vance
43	1879	T. J. Jarvis
44	1884	Alfred M. Scales
45	1888	Daniel G. Fowle
46	1890	Thomas M. Holt
47	1893	Elias Carr
48	1897	Daniel L. Russell
49	1901	Chas. B. Aycock
50	1905	Robert B. Glenn
51	1909	W. W. Kitchin
52	1913	Locke Craig

APPENDIX III.

LIST OF COUNTIES

Showing origin of name, date of organization, county seat, and population in 1910.

Name	Origin of Name	County Seat	Organized	Population
Alamance	Alamance Creek	Graham	1848	28,712
Alexander	Abram Alexander	Taylorsville	1846	11,592
Alleghany	Alleghany Mts.	Sparta	1859	7,745
Anson	Admiral Anson	Wadesboro	1749	25,465
Ashe	Gov. Samuel Ashe	Jefferson	1799	19,074
Avery	Waightstill Avery	Elkhart	1911	.....
Beaufort	Duke of Beaufort	Washington	1705	30 877
Bertie	James Bertie	Windsor	1722	23,039
Bladen	Martin Bladen	Elizabethton	1734	18,006
Brunswick	Prince of Brunswick	Southport	1764	14,432
Buncombe	Edward Buncombe	Asheville	1791	49,798
Burke	Edmund Burke	Morganton	1777	21,408
Cabarrus	Stephen Cabarrus	Concord	1792	26,240
Caldwell	Joseph Caldwell	Lenoir	1841	20,579
Carteret	George Cartaret	Beaufort	1722	13,776
Catawba	Catawba River	Newton	1842	27,918
Camden	Earl of Camden	Camden C. H.	1777	5,640
Caswell	Richard Caswell	Yanceyville	1777	14,858
Chatham	Earl of Chatham	Pittsboro	1770	22,635
Cherokee	Cherokee Indians	Murphey	1839	14,136
Chowan	Chowanoke Indians	Edenton	1663	10,258
Clay	Henry Clay	Haysville	1861	3,909
Cleveland	Benj. Cleveland	Shelby	1841	29,494
Columbus	Christopher Columbus	Whiteville	1808	28,020

LIST OF COUNTIES—Continued

Name	Origin of Name	County Seat	Organized	Population
Craven	Earl of Craven	Newbern	1712	25,594
Cumberland	Duke of Cumberland	Fayetteville	1754	35,284
Currituck	Currituck Indians	Currituck C. H.	1699	7,693
Dare	Virginia Dare	Manteo	1870	4,841
Davidson	William L. Davidson	Lexington	1822	29,404
Davie	William R. Davie	Mocksville	1836	13,394
Dublin	Dublin, Ireland	Kenansville	1749	25,442
Durham	Durham Family	Durham	1881	35,276
Edgecombe	Earl of Edgecombe	Tarboro	1741	32,010
Forsyth	Benjamin Forsyth	Winston	1849	47,311
Franklin	Benjamin Franklin	Louisburg	1779	24,692
Gaston	William Gaston	Dallas	1846	37,063
Gates	Horatio Gates	Gatesville	1779	10,455
Graham	William A. Graham	Robbinsville	1872	4,749
Granville	Lord Granville	Oxford	1746	25,102
Greene	Nathaniel Greene	Snow Hill	1783	13,083
Guilford	Earl of Guilford	Greensboro	1770	60,497
Halifax	Earl of Halifax	Halifax	1758	37,646
Harnett	Cornelius Harnett	Lillington	1855	22,174
Haywood	John Haywood	Waynesville	1808	21,020
Henderson	Leonard Henderson	Hendersonville	1838	16,282
Hertford	Lord Hertford	Winton	1759	15,436
Hoke	R. F. Hoke	Raeford	1911	.....
Hyde	Edward Hyde	Swan Quarter	1729	8,840
Iredell	James Iredell	Statesville	1788	34,315
Jackson	Andrew Jackson	Sylva	1851	12,998
Johnston	Gabriel Johnston	Smithfield	1746	41,401

LIST OF COUNTIES—Continued

Name	Origin of Name	County Seat	Organized	Population
Jones	Willie Jones	Trenton	1778	8,721
Lee	Robert E. Lee	Sanford	1907	11,376
Lenoir	William Lenoir	Kinston	1791	22,769
Lincoln	Benjamin Lincoln	Lincolnton	1778	17,132
McDowell	Joseph McDowell	Marion	1842	13,538
Macon	Nathaniel Macon	Franklin	1828	12,191
Martin	Josiah Martin	Williamston	1774	17,797
Madison	James Madison	Marshall	1851	20,132
Mecklenburg	Princess Charlotte of Mecklenburg	Charlotte	1762	67,031
Mitchell	Elisha Mitchell	Bakersville	1861	17,245
Montgomery	Richard Montgomery	Troy	1778	14,967
Moore	Alfred Moore	Carthage	1784	17,010
Nash	Francis Nash	Nashville	1777	33,727
New Hanover	House of Hanover	Wilmington	1729	32,037
Northampton	Northampton, England	Jackson	1741	22,323
Onslow	Arthur Onslow	Jacksonville	1734	14,125
Orange	House of Orange	Hillsboro	1752	15,064
Pamlico	Pamlico Sound	Bayboro	1871	9,966
Pasquotank	Pasquotank Indians	Elizabeth City	1663	16,693
Pender	William D. Pender	Burgaw	1875	15,471
Perquimans	Perquiman Indians	Hertford	1663	11,054
Person	Thomas Person	Roxboro	1791	17,356
Pitt	William Pitt	Greenville	1760	36,340
Polk	William Polk	Columbus	1855	7,640
Randolph	John Randolph	Asheboro	1778	29,491
Richmond	Duke of Richmond	Rockingham	1785	19,693

LIST OF COUNTIES—Continued

Name	Origin of Name	County Seat	Organized	Population
Robeson	Peter Robeson	Lumberton	1786	51,945
Rockingham	Lord Rockingham	Wentworth	1785	36,442
Rowan	Matthew Rowan	Salisbury	1753	37,521
Rutherford	Grifith Rutherford	Rutherfordton	1778	28,385
Sampson	John Sampson	Clinton	1784	29,982
Scotland	Old Scotland	Laurinburg	1900	15,363
Stanley	John Stanley	Albemarle	1841	19,909
Stokes	John Stokes	Danbury	1789	20,151
Surry	Surry, England	Dobson	1771	29,705
Swain	David L. Swain	Bryson City	1871	10,403
Transylvania	.....	Brevard	1861	7,191
Tyrrell	John Tyrrell	Columbia	1729	5,219
Union	.....	Monroe	1842	33,277
Vance	Z. B. Vance	Henderson	1881	19,425
Wake	Lady Tryon	Raleigh	1771	63,229
Warren	Joseph Warren	Warrenton	1778	20,266
Washington	George Washington	Plymouth	1799	11,062
Watauga	Watauga River	Boone	1840	13,556
Wayne	Anthony Wayne	Goldsboro	1779	35,698
Wilkes	John Wilkes	Wilkesboro	1777	30,282
Wilson	Louis D. Wilson	Wilson	1855	28,269
Yadkin	Yadkin River	Yadkinville	1850	15,428
Yancey	Bartlett Yancey	Burnsville	1833	12,072

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 014 417 750 2